# Table of Contents

1. Data Choices ........................................................................................................... 1
2. Administrative Webinterface .................................................................................... 2
   2.1. Grafana Dashboard Box .................................................................................... 2
   2.2. Operator Board ............................................................................................... 4
      2.2.1. Configuration ............................................................................................. 5
      2.2.2. Dashlets ................................................................................................. 7
      2.2.3. Boosting Dashlet .................................................................................... 10
      2.2.4. Criteria Builder ...................................................................................... 11
   2.3. JMX Configuration Generator .......................................................................... 12
      2.3.1. Web based utility .................................................................................... 12
      2.3.2. CLI based utility .................................................................................... 15
   2.4. Heatmap ........................................................................................................... 21
3. Service Assurance ..................................................................................................... 26
   3.1. Pollerd Configuration ...................................................................................... 26
   3.2. Critical Service ............................................................................................... 28
   3.3. Downtime Model ............................................................................................ 28
   3.4. Path Outages ................................................................................................. 29
   3.5. Poller Packages ............................................................................................. 30
      3.5.1. Response Time Configuration ................................................................ 31
      3.5.2. Overlapping Services ............................................................................ 32
      3.5.3. Test Services on manually ................................................................... 34
   3.6. Service monitors ............................................................................................. 35
      3.6.1. AvailabilityMonitor ............................................................................... 35
      3.6.2. BgpSessionMonitor .............................................................................. 36
      3.6.3. BSFMonitor ............................................................................................ 39
      3.6.4. CiscoIpSlaMonitor ............................................................................... 47
      3.6.5. CiscoPingMibMonitor .......................................................................... 49
      3.6.6. CitrixMonitor ......................................................................................... 55
      3.6.7. DhcMonitor ............................................................................................. 56
      3.6.8. DiskUsageMonitor .................................................................................. 60
      3.6.9. DnsMonitor ............................................................................................. 62
      3.6.10. DNSResolutionMonitor ....................................................................... 64
      3.6.11. FtpMonitor ............................................................................................. 67
      3.6.12. HostResourceSwRunMonitor ................................................................. 68
      3.6.13. HttpMonitor ........................................................................................... 70
      3.6.15. HttpsMonitor ......................................................................................... 76
      3.6.16. IcmpMonitor ........................................................................................... 76
5. Events

5.2. Sources of Events

5.2.1. SNMP Traps

5.2.2. Syslog Messages

5.2.3. TL1 Autonomous Messages
13. Ticketing ................................. 241
  13.1. JIRA Ticketing Plugin ............ 241
    13.1.1. Setup .......................... 241
  13.2. TSRM Ticketing Plugin .......... 242
    13.2.1. Setup .......................... 242
    13.2.2. Mapping OpenNMS Ticket with TSRM Incident .......................... 243
14. Enabling RMI .............................. 244
  14.1. Enabling RMI ........................ 244
  14.2. Enabling SSL ....................... 245
  14.3. Connecting to RMI over SSL .... 245
  14.4. Creating Custom Authentication Roles .......................... 246
15. Plugin Manager ........................... 247
  15.1. Plugin Manager UI panel .......... 247
  15.2. Setting Karaf Instance Data ..... 249
  15.3. Manually adding a managed Karaf instance .......................... 251
  15.4. Installed Plugins .................. 251
  15.5. Available Plugins Server ......... 253
  15.6. Installing Available Plugins ........ 254
  15.7. Plugins Manifest ................... 255
  15.8. Installed Licences Panel .......... 256
  15.9. Adding a New Licence .............. 257

11.2.4. Sub-command: delete .............................. 227
11.3. newts-repository-converter: Rrd/Jrb to Newts migration utility .......................... 227
  11.3.1. Migration .......................... 228
  11.3.2. Usage .............................. 229
  11.3.3. Example 1: convert Rrd-based data with storeByGroup enabled .......................... 229
  11.3.4. Example 2: convert JRobin-based data with storeByGroup disabled .......................... 229
11.4. Newts ................................. 230
  11.4.1. Configuration .......................... 230
  11.4.2. Cassandra Monitoring ............ 232
  11.4.3. Newts Monitoring ................. 237
11.5. Daemon Configuration Files .......... 239
  11.5.1. Notifd .............................. 239
12. System Properties ........................ 240
13. Ticketing ................................. 241
Chapter 1. Data Choices

The Data Choices module collects and publishes anonymous usage statistics to https://stats.opennms.org.

When a user with the Admin role logs into the system for the first time, they will be prompted as to whether or not they want to opt-in to publish these statistics. Statistics will only be published once an Administrator has opted-in.

Usage statistics can later be disabled by accessing the 'Data Choices' link in the 'Admin' menu.

When enabled, the following anonymous statistics will be collected and publish on system startup and every 24 hours after:

- System ID (a randomly generated UUID)
- OpenNMS Horizon Release
- OpenNMS Horizon Version
- OS Architecture
- OS Name
- OS Version
  1. Number of Alarms in the alarms table
  2. Number of Events in the events table
  3. Number of IP Interfaces in the ipinterface table
  4. Number of Nodes in the node table
  5. Number of Nodes, grouped by System OID
Chapter 2. Administrative Webinterface

2.1. Grafana Dashboard Box

**Grafana** provides an API key which gives access for 3rd party application like **OpenNMS Horizon**. The **Grafana Dashboard Box** on the start page shows dashboards related to **OpenNMS Horizon**. To filter relevant dashboards, you can use a tag for dashboards and make them accessible. If no tag is provided all dashboards from **Grafana** will be shown.

The feature is by default deactivated and is configured through **opennms.properties**. Please note that this feature works with the **Grafana API v2.5.0**.

*Quick access to Grafana dashboards from the OpenNMS Horizon start page*
### Table 1. Grafana Dashboard configuration properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.show</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>This setting controls whether a grafana box showing the available dashboards is placed on the landing page. The two valid options for this are <code>true</code> or <code>false</code>.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.hostname</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>If the box is enabled you also need to specify hostname of the Grafana server</td>
<td>localhost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.port</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>The port of the Grafana server ReST API</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.apiKey</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The API key is needed for the ReST calls to work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.tag</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>When a tag is specified only dashboards with this given tag will be displayed. When no tag is given all dashboards will be displayed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.protocol</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The protocol for the ReST call can also be specified</td>
<td>http</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.connectionTimeout</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for getting information from the Grafana server</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.grafanaBox.soTimeout</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have Grafana behind a proxy it is important the org.opennms.grafanaBox.hostname is reachable. This host name is used to generate links to the Grafana dashboards.

The process to generate an Grafana API Key can be found in the HTTP API documentation. Copy the API Key to opennms.properties as org.opennms.grafanaBox.apiKey.

### 2.2. Operator Board

In a network operation center (NOC) the Ops Board can be used to visualize monitoring information. The monitoring information for various use-cases are arranged in configurable Dashlets. To address different user groups it is possible to create multiple Ops Boards.

There are two visualisation components to display Dashlets:

- **Ops Panel**: Shows multiple Dashlets on one screen, e.g. on a NOC operators workstation
- **Ops Board**: Shows one Dashlet at a time in rotation, e.g. for a screen wall in a NOC
2.2.1. Configuration

To create and configure *Ops Boards* administration permissions are required. The configuration section is in admin area of OpenNMS Horizon and named *Ops Board Config Web Ui*. 
Figure 3. Navigation to the Ops Board configuration

Create or modify Ops Boards is described in the following screenshot.

Figure 4. Adding a Dashlet to an existing Ops Board

1. Create a new Ops Board to organize and arrange different Dashlets
2. The name to identify the Ops Board
3. Add a Dashlet to show OpenNMS Horizon monitoring information
4. Show a preview of the whole *Ops Board*

5. List of available *Dashlets*

6. *Priority* for this *Dashlet* in *Ops Board* rotation, lower priority means it will be displayed more often

7. *Duration* in seconds for this *Dashlet* in the *Ops Board* rotation

8. Change *Priority* if the *Dashlet* is in alert state, this is optional and maybe not available in all *Dashlets*

9. Change *Duration* if the *Dashlet* is in alert state, it is optional and maybe not available in all *Dashlets*

10. Configuration properties for this *Dashlet*

11. Remove this *Dashlet* from the *Ops Board*

12. Order *Dashlets* for the rotation on the *Ops Board* and the tile view in the *Ops Panel*

13. Show a preview for the whole *Ops Board*

The configured *Ops Board* can be used by navigating in the main menu to *Dashboard → Ops Board*.

![Ops Board](image.png)

*Figure 5. Navigation to use the Ops Board*

### 2.2.2. Dashlets

Visualization of information is implemented in *Dashlets*. The different *Dashlets* are described in this section with all available configuration parameters.

To allow filter information the *Dashlet* can be configured with a generic *Criteria Builder*.

**Alarm Details**

This *Alarm-Details Dashlet* shows a table with alarms and some detailed information.
### Table 2. Information of the alarms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alarm ID</td>
<td>OpenNMS Horizon ID for the alarm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Alarm severity (Cleared, Indeterminate, Normal, Warning, Minor, Major, Critical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node label</td>
<td>Node label of the node where the alarm occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm count</td>
<td>Alarm count based on reduction key for deduplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Event Time</td>
<td>Last time the alarm occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Message</td>
<td>Reason and detailed log message of the alarm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *Alarm Details Dashlet* can be configured with the following parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th><strong>Boosted Severity</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td><strong>Criteria Builder</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Alarms

This *Alarms Dashlet* shows a table with a short alarm description.

### Table 3. Information of the alarm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Absolute time since the alarm appeared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node label</td>
<td>Node label of the node where the alarm occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UEI</td>
<td>OpenNMS Horizon <em>Unique Event Identifier</em> for this alarm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *Alarms Dashlet* can be configured with the following parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th><strong>Boosted Severity</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td><strong>Criteria Builder</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Charts

This *Dashlet* displays an existing *Chart*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chart</strong></td>
<td>Name of the existing chart to display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximize Width</td>
<td>Rescale the image to fill display width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximize Height</td>
<td>Rescale the image to fill display height</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Image

This Dashlet displays an image by a given URL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imageUrl</td>
<td>URL with the location of the image to show in this Dashlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximizeHeight</td>
<td>Rescale the image to fill display width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximizeWidth</td>
<td>Rescale the image to fill display height</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KSC

This Dashlet shows an existing KSC report. The view is exact the same as the KSC report is build regarding order, columns and time spans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KSC-Report</td>
<td>Name of the KSC report to show in this Dashlet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Map

This Dashlet displays the geographical map.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>search</td>
<td>Predefined search for a subset of nodes shown in the geographical map in this Dashlet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RRD

This Dashlet shows one or multiple RRD graphs. It is possible to arrange and order the RRD graphs in multiple columns and rows. All RRD graphs are normalized with a given width and height.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Columns</td>
<td>Number of columns within the Dashlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rows</td>
<td>Number of rows with the Dashlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KSC Report</td>
<td>Import RRD graphs from an existing KSC report and re-arrange them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graph Width</td>
<td>Generic width for all RRD graphs in this Dashlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graph Height</td>
<td>Generic height for all RRD graphs in this Dashlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeframe value</td>
<td>Number of the given Timeframe type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeframe type</td>
<td>Minute, Hour, Day, Week, Month and Year for all RRD graphs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RTC

This Dashlet shows the configured SLA categories from the OpenNMS Horizon start page.
### Summary

This **Dashlet** shows a trend of incoming alarms in given time frame.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeslot</td>
<td>Time slot in seconds to evaluate the trend for alarms by severity and <strong>UEI</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Surveillance

This **Dashlet** shows a given **Surveillance View**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>viewName</td>
<td>Name of the configured <strong>Surveillance View</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Topology

This **Dashlet** shows a **Topology Map**. The **Topology Map** can be configured with the following parameter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>focusNodes</td>
<td>Which node(s) is in focus for the topology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provider</td>
<td>Which topology should be displayed, e.g. Linkd, VMware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szl</td>
<td>Set the zoom level for the topology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### URL

This **Dashlet** shows the content of a web page or other web application, e.g. other monitoring systems by a given URL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boost support</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Optional password if a basic authentication is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>URL to the web application or web page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Optional username if a basic authentication is required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2.2.3. Boosting Dashlet

The behavior to boost a **Dashlet** describes the behavior of a **Dashlet** showing critical monitoring information. It can raise the priority in the **Ops Board** rotation to indicate a problem. This behavior can be configured with the configuration parameter **Boost Priority** and **Boost Duration**. These to configuration parameter effect the behavior on the **Ops Board** in rotation.
• Boost Priority: Absolute priority of the Dashlet with critical monitoring information.
• Boost Duration: Absolute duration in seconds of the Dashlet with critical monitoring information.

2.2.4. Criteria Builder

The Criteria Builder is a generic component to filter information of a Dashlet. Some Dashlets use this component to filter the shown information on a Dashlet for certain use case. It is possible to combine multiple Criteria to display just a subset of information in a given Dashlet.

Table 4. Generic Criteria Builder configuration possibilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restriction</th>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value 1</th>
<th>Value 2</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asc</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ascending order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desc</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>descending order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Between</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Subset of data between value 1 and value 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contains</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select all data which contains a given text string in a given database attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinct</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select a single instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eq</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select data where attribute equals (=) a given text string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ge</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select data where attribute is greater equals than (&gt;=) a given text value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gt</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select data where attribute is greater than (&gt; a given text value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IsNull</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select data where attribute is null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IsNotNull</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select data where attribute is not null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IsNotNull</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select data where attribute is not null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select data where attribute is less equals than (&lt;=) a given text value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restriction</td>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lt</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td></td>
<td>Select data where attribute is less than ((&lt;)) a given text value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td></td>
<td>Select data where attribute is less equals than ((\leq)) a given text value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Like</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td></td>
<td>Select data where attribute is like a given text value similar to SQL (\text{like})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td></td>
<td>Limit the result set by a given number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td></td>
<td>Select data where attribute is not equals ((!=)) a given text value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>String</td>
<td></td>
<td>\textit{unknown} difference between Ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrderBy</td>
<td>database attribute</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Order the result set by a given attribute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.3. JMX Configuration Generator

*OpenNMS Horizon* implements the *JMX* protocol to collect long term performance data for *Java* applications. There are a huge variety of metrics available and administrators have to select which information should be collected. The *JMX Configuration Generator Tools* is build to help generating valid complex *JMX* data collection configuration and *RRD graph* definitions for *OpenNMS Horizon*.

This tool is available as CLI and a web based version.

#### 2.3.1. Web based utility

Complex *JMX* data collection configurations can be generated from a web based tool. It collects all available *MBean Attributes* or *Composite Data Attributes* from a *JMX* enabled Java application.

The workflow of the tool is:

1. Connect with *JMX* or *JMXMP* against a *MBean Server* provided of a *Java* application
2. Retrieve all *MBean* and *Composite Data* from the application
3. Select specific *MBeans* and *Composite Data* objects which should be collected by *OpenNMS Horizon*
4. Generate *JMX Collectd* configuration file and *RRD graph* definitions for *OpenNMS Horizon* as downloadable archive

The following connection settings are supported:

- Ability to connect to *MBean Server* with *RMI* based *JMX*
- Authentication credentials for *JMX* connection
• Optional: JMXMP connection

The web based configuration tool can be used in the OpenNMS Horizon Web Application in administration section Admin → JMX Configuration Generator.

Configure JMX Connection

At the beginning the connection to an MBean Server of a Java application has to be configured.

Figure 6. JMX connection configuration window

- Service name: The name of the service to bind the JMX data collection for Collectd
- Host: IP address or FQDN connecting to the MBean Server to load MBeans and Composite Data into the generation tool
- Port: Port to connect to the MBean Server
- Authentication: Enable / Disable authentication for JMX connection with username and password
- Skip non-number values: Skip attributes with non-number values
- JMXMP: Enable / Disable JMX Messaging Protocol instead of using JMX over RMI

By clicking the arrow (>) the MBeans and Composite Data will be retrieved with the given connection settings. The data is loaded into the MBeans Configuration screen which allows to select metrics for the data collection configuration.

Select MBeans and Composite

The MBeans Configuration section is used to assign the MBean and Composite Data attributes to RRD domain specific data types and data source names.
Figure 7. Select MBeans or Composite Data for OpenNMS Horizon data collection

The left sidebar shows the tree with the JMX Domain, MBeans and Composite Data hierarchy retrieved from the MBean Server. To select or deselect all attributes use Mouse right click → select/deselect.

The right panel shows the MBean Attributes with the RRD specific mapping and allows to select or deselect specific MBean Attributes or Composite Data Attributes for the data collection configuration.

Figure 8. Configure MBean attributes for data collection configuration

Figure 9. Configure Composite attributes for data collection configuration
• **MBean Name or Composite Alias**: Identifies the MBean or the Composite Data object

• **Selected**: Enable/Disable the **MBean attribute or Composite Member** to be included in the data collection configuration

• **Name**: Name of the **MBean attribute or Composite Member**

• **Alias**: the **data source name** for persisting measurements in **RRD** or **JRobin** file

• **Type**: **Gauge** or **Counter** data type for persisting measurements in **RRD** or **JRobin** file

The **MBean Name**, **Composite Alias** and **Name** are validated against special characters. For the **Alias** inputs are validated to be not longer then 19 characters and have to be unique in the data collection configuration.

**Download and include configuration**

The last step is generating the following configuration files for **OpenNMS Horizon**:

- **collectd-configuration.xml**: Generated sample configuration assigned to a service with a matching data collection group

- **jmx-datacollection-config.xml**: Generated **JMX** data collection configuration with the selected MBeans and Composite Data

- **snmp-graph.properties**: Generated default **RRD** graph definition files for all selected metrics

The content of the configuration files can be copy & pasted or can be downloaded as **ZIP archive**.

*Info* If the content of the configuration file exceeds 2,500 lines, the files can only be downloaded as **ZIP archive**.

**2.3.2. CLI based utility**

The command line (CLI) based tool is not installed by default. It is available as **Debian** and **RPM** package in the official repositories.

**Installation**

**RHEL based installation with Yum**

```bash
yum install opennms-jmx-config-generator
```

**Debian based installation with apt**

```bash
apt-get install opennms-jmx-config-generator
```

**Installation from source**

It is required to have the **Java 8 Development Kit** with **Apache Maven** installed. The **mvn** binary has to be in the path environment. After cloning the repository you have to enter the source folder and compile an executable **JAR**.
Inside the newly created target folder a file named jmxconfiggenerator-<VERSION>-onejar.jar is present. This file can be invoked by:

```bash
java -jar target/jmxconfiggenerator-18.0.0-SNAPSHOT-onejar.jar
```

### Usage

After installing the the JMX Config Generator the tool’s wrapper script is located in the ${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin directory.

```bash
$ cd /path/to/opennms/bin
$ ./jmx-config-generator
```

> When invoked without parameters the usage and help information is printed.

The JMX Config Generator uses sub-commands for the different configuration generation tasks. Each of these sub-commands provide different options and parameters. The command line tool accepts the following sub-commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>Queries a MBean Server for certain MBeans and attributes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate-conf</td>
<td>Generates a valid jmx-datacollection-config.xml file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate-graph</td>
<td>Generates a RRD graph definition file with matching graph definitions for a given jmx-datacollection-config.xml.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following global options are available in each of the sub-commands of the tool:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-h (--help)</td>
<td>Show help and usage information.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-v (--verbose)</td>
<td>Enables verbose mode for debugging purposes.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sub-command: query

This sub-command is used to query a MBean Server for it’s available MBean objects. The following example queries the server myserver with the credentials myusername/mypassword on port 7199 for MBean objects in the java.lang domain.
The following command line options are available for the `query` sub-command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;filter criteria&gt;</code></td>
<td>A filter criteria to query the <code>MBean Server</code> for. The format is <code>&lt;objectname&gt;[:attribute name]</code>. The <code>&lt;objectname&gt;</code> accepts the default JMX object name pattern to identify the <code>MBeans</code> to be retrieved. If null all domains are shown. If no key properties are specified, the domain's <code>MBeans</code> are retrieved. To execute for certain attributes, you have to add <code>&lt;attribute name&gt;</code>. The <code>&lt;attribute name&gt;</code> accepts regular expressions. When multiple <code>&lt;filter criteria&gt;</code> are provided they are OR concatenated.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--host <code>host</code></td>
<td>Hostname or IP address of the remote JMX host.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ids-only</td>
<td>Only show the ids of the attributes.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ignore <code>&lt;filter criteria&gt;</code></td>
<td>Set <code>&lt;filter criteria&gt;</code> to ignore while running.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--include-values</td>
<td>Include attribute values.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--jmxmp</td>
<td>Use JMXMP and not JMX over RMI.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password <code>&lt;password&gt;</code></td>
<td>Password for JMX authentication.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--port <code>port</code></td>
<td>Port of JMX service.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option/Argument</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--show-domains</td>
<td>Only lists the available domains.</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--show-empty</td>
<td>Includes MBeans, even if they do not have attributes. Either due to the &lt;filter criteria&gt; or while there are none.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--url &lt;url&gt;</td>
<td>Custom connection URL</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username &lt;username&gt;</td>
<td>Username for JMX authentication.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-h (--help)</td>
<td>Show help and usage information.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-v (--verbose)</td>
<td>Enables verbose mode for debugging purposes.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sub-command: generate-conf

This sub-command can be used to generate a valid `jmx-datacollection-config.xml` for a given set of MBean objects queried from a MBean Server.

The following example generate a configuration file `myconfig.xml` for MBean objects in the java.lang domain of the server myserver on port 7199 with the credentials myusername/mypassword. You have to define either an URL or a hostname and port to connect to a JMX server.

```
jmx-config-generator generate-conf --host myserver --username myusername --password mypassword --port 7199 "java.lang:\*" --output myconfig.xml
```

Dictionary entries loaded: '18'

The following options are available for the `generate-conf` sub-command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;attribute id&gt;</td>
<td>A list of attribute Ids to be included for the generation of the configuration file.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--dictionary &lt;file&gt;</td>
<td>Path to a dictionary file for replacing attribute names and part of MBean attributes. The file should have for each line a replacement, e.g. Auxillary:Auxil.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--host &lt;host&gt;</td>
<td>Hostname or IP address of JMX host.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--jmxmp</td>
<td>Use JMXMP and not JMX over RMI.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--output &lt;file&gt;</td>
<td>Output filename to write generated jmx-datacollection-config.xml.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password &lt;password&gt;</td>
<td>Password for JMX authentication.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--port &lt;port&gt;</td>
<td>Port of JMX service</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option/Argument</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--print-dictionary</td>
<td>Prints the used dictionary to STDOUT. May be used with --dictionary</td>
<td>May be used with false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--service &lt;value&gt;</td>
<td>The Service Name used as JMX data collection name.</td>
<td>anyservice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--skipDefaultVM</td>
<td>Skip default JavaVM Beans.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--skipNonNumber</td>
<td>Skip attributes with non-number values</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--url &lt;url&gt;</td>
<td>Custom connection URL</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username &lt;username&gt;</td>
<td>Username for JMX authentication</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-h (--help)</td>
<td>Show help and usage information.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-v (--verbose)</td>
<td>Enables verbose mode for debugging purposes.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The option --skipDefaultVM offers the ability to ignore the MBeans provided as standard by the JVM and just create configurations for the MBeans provided by the Java Application itself. This is particularly useful if an optimized configuration for the JVM already exists. If the --skipDefaultVM option is not set the generated configuration will include the MBeans of the JVM and the MBeans of the Java Application.

Check the file and see if there are alias names with more than 19 characters. This errors are marked with NAME_CRASH_AS_19_CHAR_VALUE

**Sub-command: generate-graph**

This sub-command generates a RRD graph definition file for a given configuration file. The following example generates a graph definition file mygraph.properties using the configuration in file myconfig.xml.

```
./jmx-config-generator generate-graph --input myconfig.xml --output mygraph.properties
reports=java.lang.ClassLoading.MBeanReport,
   java.lang.ClassLoading.0TotalLoadedClassCnt.AttributeReport,
   java.lang.ClassLoading.0LoadedClassCnt.AttributeReport,
   java.lang.ClassLoading.0UnloadedClassCnt.AttributeReport,
   java.langCompilation.MBeanReport,
<output omitted>
```

The following options are available for this sub-command.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--input &lt;jmx-datacollection.xml&gt;</td>
<td>Configuration file to use as input to generate the graph properties file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--output &lt;file&gt;</td>
<td>Output filename for the generated graph properties file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--print-template</td>
<td>Prints the default template.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--template &lt;file&gt;</td>
<td>Template file using Apache Velocity template engine to be used to generate the graph properties.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-h (--help)</td>
<td>Show help and usage information.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-v (--verbose)</td>
<td>Enables verbose mode for debugging purposes.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Graph Templates**

The JMX Config Generator uses a template file to generate the graphs. It is possible to use a user-defined template. The option `--template` followed by a file lets the JMX Config Generator use the external template file as base for the graph generation. The following example illustrates how a custom template `mytemplate.vm` is used to generate the graph definition file `mygraph.properties` using the configuration in file `myconfig.xml`.

```
./jmx-config-generator generate-graph --input myconfig.xml --output mygraph.properties --template mytemplate.vm
```

The template file has to be an Apache Velocity template. The following sample represents the template that is used by default:
The JMX Config Generator generates different types of graphs from the jmx-datacollection-config.xml. The different types are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AttributeReport</td>
<td>For each attribute of any MBean a graph will be generated. Composite attributes will be ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MbeanReport</td>
<td>For each MBean a combined graph with all attributes of the MBeans is generated. Composite attributes will be ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CompositeReport</td>
<td>For each composite attribute of every MBean a graph is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CompositeAttribute Report</td>
<td>For each composite member of every MBean a combined graph with all composite attributes is generated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.4. Heatmap

The Heatmap can be either be used to display unacknowledged alarms or to display ongoing outages of nodes. Each of this visualizations can be applied on categories, foreign sources or services of nodes. The sizing of an entity is calculated by counting the services inside the entity. Thus, a node with fewer services will appear in a smaller box than a node with more services.

The feature is by default deactivated and is configured through opennms.properties.
Heatmap visualizations of alarms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sources / Services</th>
<th>0% down</th>
<th>10% down</th>
<th>20% down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Servers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncategorized</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.heatmap.defaultMode</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>There exist two options for using the heatmap: alarms and outages. This option configures which are displayed per default.</td>
<td>alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.heatmap.defaultHeatmap</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>This option defines which Heatmap is displayed by default. Valid options are categories, foreignSources and monitoredServices.</td>
<td>categories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.heatmap.categoryFilter</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The following option is used to filter for categories to be displayed in the Heatmap. This option uses the Java regular expression syntax. The default is .* so all categories will be displayed.</td>
<td>.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.heatmap.foreignSourceFilter</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The following option is used to filter for foreign sources to be displayed in the <em>Heatmap</em>. This option uses the Java regular expression syntax. The default is .* so all foreign sources will be displayed.</td>
<td>.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.heatmap.serviceFilter</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The following option is used to filter for services to be displayed in the <em>Heatmap</em>. This option uses the Java regular expression syntax. The default is .* so all services will be displayed.</td>
<td>.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.heatmap.onlyUnacknowledged</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>This option configures whether only unacknowledged alarms will be taken into account when generating the alarm-based version of the <em>Heatmap</em>.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.web.console.centerUrl</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>You can also place the <em>Heatmap</em> on the landing page by setting this option to /heatmap/heatmap-box.jsp.</td>
<td>/surveillanc-e-box.jsp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use negative lookahead expressions for excluding categories you wish not to be displayed in the heatmap, e.g. by using an expression like ^(?!XY).* you can filter out entities with names starting with *XY*. 
Chapter 3. Service Assurance

In OpenNMS the daemon to measures service availability and latency is done by Pollerd. To run these tests Service Monitors are scheduled and run in parallel in a Thread Pool. The behavior of Pollerd uses the following files for configuration and logging. Functionalities and general concepts are described in the User Documentation of OpenNMS. This section describes how to configure Pollerd for service assurance with all available Service Monitors coming with OpenNMS.

3.1. Pollerd Configuration

Table 6. Configuration and log files related to Pollerd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/poller-configuration.xml</code></td>
<td>Configuration file for monitors and global daemon configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>$OPENNMS_HOME/logs/poller.log</code></td>
<td>Log file for all monitors and the global Pollerd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/response-graph.properties</code></td>
<td>RRD graph definitions for service response time measurements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/events/opennms.events.xml</code></td>
<td>Event definitions for Pollerd, i.e. nodeLostService, interfaceDown or nodeDown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To change the behavior for service monitoring, the poller-configuration.xml can be modified. The configuration file is structured in the following parts:

- **Global daemon config**: Define the size of the used Thread Pool to run Service Monitors in parallel. Define and configure the Critical Service for Node Event Correlation.
- **Polling packages**: Package to allow grouping of configuration parameters for Service Monitors.
- **Downtime Model**: Configure the behavior of Pollerd to run tests in case of an Outage is detected.
- **Monitor service association**: Based on the name of the service, the implementation for application or network management protocols are assigned.

**Global configuration parameters for Pollerd**

```xml
<poller-configuration threads="30" ① pathOutageEnabled="false" ② serviceUnresponsiveEnabled="false"> ③
```

① Size of the Thread Pool to run Service Monitors in parallel
② Enable or Disable Path Outage functionality based on a Critical Node in a network path
③ In case of unresponsive service services a serviceUnresponsive event is generated and not an outage. It prevents to apply the Downtime Model to retest the service after 30 seconds and prevents false alarms.

Configuration changes are applied by restarting OpenNMS and Pollerd. It is also possible to send an Event to Pollerd reloading the configuration. An Event can be sent on the CLI or the Web User...
Interface.

Send configuration reload event on CLI

cd $OPENNMS_HOME/bin
./send-event.pl uei.opennms.org/internal/reloadDaemonConfig --parm 'daemonName Pollerd'

Figure 10. Send configuration reload event with the Web User Interface
If you define new services in `poller-configuration.xml` a service restart of OpenNMS is necessary.

### 3.2. Critical Service

The *Critical Service* is used to correlate outages from *Services* to a *nodeDown* or *interfaceDown* event. It is a global configuration of *Pollerd* defined in `poller-configuration.xml`. The *OpenNMS* default configuration enables this behavior.

#### Critical Service Configuration in Pollerd

```xml
<poller-configuration threads="30">
  <pathOutageEnabled>false</pathOutageEnabled>
  <serviceUnresponsiveEnabled>false</serviceUnresponsiveEnabled>
</poller-configuration>

<node-outage status="on">
  <pollAllIfNoCriticalServiceDefined>true</pollAllIfNoCriticalServiceDefined>
  <critical-service name="ICMP"/>
</node-outage>
```

1. **Enable Node Outage** correlation based on a *Critical Service*
2. Optional: In case of nodes without a *Critical Service* this option controls the behavior. If set to `true` then all services will be polled. If set to `false` then the first service in the package that exists on the node will be polled until service is restored, and then polling will resume for all services.
3. **Define Critical Service** for *Node Outage* correlation

### 3.3. Downtime Model

By default the monitoring interval for a service is 5 minutes. To detect also short services outages, caused for example by automatic network rerouting, the downtime model can be used. On a detected service outage, the interval is reduced to 30 seconds for 5 minutes. If the service comes back within 5 minutes, a shorter outage is documented and the impact on service availability can be less than 5 minutes. This behavior is called *Downtime Model* and is configurable.

![Downtime Model Diagram](image)

*Figure 11. Downtime model with resolved and ongoing outage*
In figure Outages and Downtime Model there are two outages. The first outage shows a short outage which was detected as up after 90 seconds. The second outage is not resolved now and the monitor has not detected an available service and was not available in the first 5 minutes (10 times 30 second polling). The scheduler changed the polling interval back to 5 minutes.

Example default configuration of the Downtime Model

```
<downtime interval="30000" begin="0" end="300000" /> ①
<downtime interval="300000" begin="300000" end="43200000" /> ②
<downtime interval="600000" begin="43200000" end="432000000" /> ③
<downtime begin="432000000" delete="true" /> ④
```

① from 0 seconds after an outage is detected until 5 minutes the polling interval will be set to 30 seconds
② after 5 minutes of an ongoing outage until 12 hours the polling interval will be set to 5 minutes
③ after 12 hours of an ongoing outage until 5 days the polling interval will be set to 10 minutes
④ after 5 days of an ongoing outage the service will be deleted from the monitoring system

### 3.4. Path Outages

To reduce the amount of alarms and notifications a Path Outage can be configured. This functionality is used to suppress Notifications based on the node depending on each other in the network path. The dependency is modeled in the Node Provisioning in Path Outage.

By default the Path Outage feature is disabled and has to be enabled in the pollerd-configuration.xml.

It requires the following information:

- **Parent Foreign Source**: The Foreign Source where the parent node is defined.
- **Parent Foreign ID**: The Foreign ID of the parent Node where this node depends on.
- The IP Interface selected as Primary is used as Critical IP

Additionally it is possible to define generic rules for Path Outages. For example there is a whole IP Subnet behind a Router and this Router is the Critical Path to this IP Subnet.

The configuration can be made in Admin → Configure Notifications → Configure Path Outages. It requires to specify a Critical IP of the Router and allows to specify the IP Subnet by defining a Rule/Filter. They are specified in Rules/Filters in the OpenNMS Wiki. In this case, the Router with all Nodes on the IP Subnet are down, but only one Notification is sent. All other Node Down notifications are suppressed matching the Rule/Filter defined in the Path Outage.
To configure a *Path Outage* based on the example in figure *Topology for Path Outage*, the configuration has to be defined as the following.

This example expects all *Nodes* are defined in the same *Foreign Source* named `Network-ACME` and the *Foreign ID* is the same as the *Node Label*.

**Table 7. Provisioning for Topology Example**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Foreign Source</th>
<th>Parent Foreign ID</th>
<th>Provisioned Node</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>not defined</td>
<td>not defined</td>
<td>default-gw-01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network-ACME</td>
<td>default-gw-01</td>
<td>node-01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network-ACME</td>
<td>default-gw-01</td>
<td>node-02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network-ACME</td>
<td>default-gw-01</td>
<td>default-gw02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network-ACME</td>
<td>default-gw-02</td>
<td>node-03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network-ACME</td>
<td>default-gw-02</td>
<td>node-04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *IP Interface* which is set to *Primary* is selected as the *Critical IP*. In this example it is important the *IP interface* on `default-gw-01` in the network `192.168.1.0/24` is set as *Primary* interface. The *IP interface* in the network `172.23.42.0/24` on `default-gw-02` is set as *Primary* interface.

### 3.5. Poller Packages

To define more complex monitoring configuration it is possible to group *Service* configurations into
Polling Packages. They allow to define assign to Nodes different Service Configurations. To assign a Polling Package to nodes the Rules/Filters syntax can be used. Each Polling Package can have its own Downtime Model configuration.

Multiple packages can be configured, and an interface can exist in more than one package. This gives great flexibility to how the service levels will be determined for a given device.

Polling package assigned to Nodes with Rules and Filters

```
<package name="example1"> ①
  <filter>IPADDR != '0.0.0.0'</filter> ②
  <include-range begin="1.1.1.1" end="254.254.254.254"/> ③
  <include-range begin="::1" end="ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff"/> ③
</package>
```

① Unique name of the polling package.
② Filter can be based on IP address, categories or asset attributes of Nodes based on Rules/Filters. The filter is evaluated first and is required. This package is used for all IP Interfaces which don’t have 0.0.0.0 as an assigned IP address and is required.
③ Allow to specify if the configuration of Services is applied on a range of IP Interfaces (IPv4 or IPv6).

Instead of the include-range it is possible to add one or more specific IP-Interfaces with:

Defining a specific IP Interfaces

```
<specific>192.168.1.59</specific>
```

It is also possible to exclude IP Interfaces with:

Exclude IP Interfaces

```
<exclude-range begin="192.168.0.100" end="192.168.0.104"/>
```

3.5.1. Response Time Configuration

The definition of Polling Packages allows to configure similar services with different polling intervals. All the response time measurements are persisted in RRD Files and require a definition. Each Polling Package contains a RRD definition
**RRD configuration for Polling Package example1**

```xml
<package name="example1">
  <filter>IPADDR != '0.0.0.0'</filter>
  <include-range begin="1.1.1.1" end="254.254.254.254" />
  <include-range begin="::1" end="ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff" />
  <rrd step="300">
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:1:2016</rra> ①
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:12:1488</rra> ②
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:288:366</rra> ③
    <rra>RRA:MAX:0.5:288:366</rra> ④
    <rra>RRA:MIN:0.5:288:366</rra> ⑤
  </rrd>
</package>
```

① Polling interval for all services in this **Polling Package** is reflected in the step of size 300 seconds. All services in this package have to polled in 5 min interval, otherwise response time measurements are not correct persisted.

② 1 step size is persisted 2016 times: 1 * 5 min * 2016 = 7 d, 5 min accuracy for 7 d.

③ 12 steps average persisted 1488 times: 12 * 5 min * 1488 = 62 d, aggregated to 60 min for 62 d.

④ 288 steps average persisted 366 times: 288 * 5 min * 366 = 366 d, aggregated to 24 h for 366 d.

⑤ 288 steps maximum from 24 h persisted for 366 d.

⑥ 288 steps minimum from 24 h persisted for 366 d.

⚠️ The **RRD** configuration and the service polling interval has to be aligned. In other cases the persisted response time data is not correct displayed in the response time graph.

⚠️ If the polling interval is changed afterwards, existing **RRD** files needs to be recreated with the new definitions.

### 3.5.2. Overlapping Services

With the possibility of specifying multiple **Polling Packages** it is possible to use the same **Service** like **ICMP** multiple times. The order how **Polling Packages** in the **poller-configuration.xml** are defined is important when **IP Interfaces** match multiple **Polling Packages** with the same **Service** configuration.

The following example shows which configuration is applied for a specific service:
<package name="less-specific">
  <filter>IPADDR != '0.0.0.0'</filter>
  <include-range begin="1.1.1.1" end="254.254.254.254" />
  <include-range begin="::1" end="ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff" />
  <rrd step="300">
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:1:2016</rra>
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:12:1488</rra>
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:288:366</rra>
    <rra>RRA:MAX:0.5:288:366</rra>
    <rra>RRA:MIN:0.5:288:366</rra>
  </rrd>
  <service name="ICMP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="5" />
    <parameter key="timeout" value="10000" />
    <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response" />
    <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="icmp" />
    <parameter key="ds-name" value="icmp" />
  </service>
  <downtime interval="10000" begin="0" end="300000" />
  <downtime interval="300000" begin="300000" end="43200000" />
  <downtime interval="600000" begin="43200000" end="432000000" />
</package>

<package name="more-specific">
  <filter>IPADDR != '0.0.0.0'</filter>
  <include-range begin="192.168.1.1" end="192.168.1.254" />
  <include-range begin="2600::1" end="2600::fff" />
  <rrd step="30">
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:1:2016</rra>
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:12:1488</rra>
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:288:366</rra>
    <rra>RRA:MAX:0.5:288:366</rra>
    <rra>RRA:MIN:0.5:288:366</rra>
  </rrd>
  <service name="ICMP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="2" />
    <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
    <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response" />
    <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="icmp" />
    <parameter key="ds-name" value="icmp" />
  </service>
  <downtime interval="10000" begin="0" end="300000" />
  <downtime interval="300000" begin="300000" end="43200000" />
  <downtime interval="600000" begin="43200000" end="432000000" />
</package>

① Polling interval in the packages are 300 seconds and 30 seconds
② Different polling interval for the service ICMP
Different retry settings for the service ICMP

Different timeout settings for the service ICMP

The last Polling Package on the service will be applied. This can be used to define a less specific catch all filter for a default configuration. A more specific Polling Package can be used to overwrite the default setting. In the example above all IP Interfaces in 192.168.1/24 or 2600:/64 will be monitored with ICMP with different polling, retry and timeout settings.

Which Polling Packages are applied to the IP Interface and Service can be found in the Web User Interface. The IP Interface and Service page show which Polling Package and Service configuration is applied for this specific service.

![Figure 13. Polling Package applied to IP interface and Service](image)

### 3.5.3. Test Services on manually

For troubleshooting it is possible to run a test on the Command Line Interface.

```
cd $OPENNMS_HOME
./poller-test
```

- `-c, --class <arg>` Monitor Class
- `-i, --ipaddress <arg>` IP Address to test [required]
- `-P, --package <arg>` Poller Package
- `-p, --param <arg>` Service parameter ~ key=value
- `-s, --service <arg>` Service name [required]

The following example runs the ICMP monitor on a specific IP Interface.
Run ICMP monitor configuration defined in specific Polling Package

```
  cd $OPENNMS_HOME
  ./poller-test -i 10.23.42.1 -s ICMP -P example1
```

The output is verbose which allows debugging of Monitor configurations. Important output lines are shown as the following:

**Important output testing a service on the CLI**

```
Checking service ICMP on IP 10.23.42.1
Package: example1
Monitor: org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.IcmpMonitor
Parameter ds-name : icmp
Parameter rrd-base-name : icmp
Parameter rrd-repository : /var/lib/opennms/rrd/response
Parameter retry : 2
Parameter timeout : 3000
Available ? true (status Up[1])
```

1. Service and IP Interface to run the test
2. Applied Service configuration from Polling Package for this test
3. Service Monitor used for this test
4. RRD configuration for response time measurement
5. Retry and timeout settings for this test

### 3.6. Service monitors

To support several specific applications and management agents, Pollerd executes Service Monitors. This section describes all available built-in Service Monitors which are available and can be configured to allow complex monitoring. For information how these can be extended, see Development Guide of the OpenNMS documentation.

#### 3.6.1. AvailabilityMonitor

This monitor tests reachability of a node by using the isReachable method of the InetAddress java class. The service is considered available if isReachable returns true. See Oracle’s documentation for more details.

This monitor is deprecated in favour of the IcmpMonitor monitor. You should only use this monitor on remote pollers running on unusual configurations (See below for more details).
Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.AvailabilityMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 8. Monitor specific parameters for the AvailabilityMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to have the <em>isReachable</em> method return <em>true</em>.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout for the <em>isReachable</em> method, in milliseconds.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

```xml
<service name="AVAIL" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="5000"/>
</service>

<monitor service="AVAIL" class-name= "org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.AvailabilityMonitor"/>
```

IcmpMonitor vs AvailabilityMonitor

This monitor has been developed in a time when the *IcmpMonitor* monitor wasn’t remote enabled, to circumvent this limitation. Now, with the JNA ICMP implementation, the IcmpMonitor monitor is remote enabled under most configurations and this monitor shouldn’t be needed unless you’re running your remote poller on such an unusual configuration (See also issue NMS-6735 for more information).

3.6.2. BgpSessionMonitor

This monitor checks if a BGP-Session to a peering partner (peer-ip) is functional. To monitor the BGP-Session the RFC1269 SNMP MIB is used and test the status of the session using the following OIDs is used:

- **BGP_PEER_STATE_OID** = .1.3.6.1.2.1.15.3.1.2.<peer-ip>
- **BGP_PEER_ADMIN_STATE_OID** = .1.3.6.1.2.1.15.3.1.3.<peer-ip>
- **BGP_PEER_REMOTEAS_OID** = .1.3.6.1.2.1.15.3.1.9.<peer-ip>
- **BGP_PEER_LAST_ERROR_OID** = .1.3.6.1.2.1.15.3.1.14.<peer-ip>
- **BGP_PEER_FSM_EST_TIME_OID** = .1.3.6.1.2.1.15.3.1.16.<peer-ip>

The <peer-ip> is the far end IP address of the BGP session end point.
A SNMP get request for `BGP_PEER_STATE_OID` returns a result between 1 to 6. The servicestates for OpenNMS Horizon are mapped as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Result</th>
<th>State Description</th>
<th>Monitor State in OpenNMS Horizon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Idle</td>
<td>DOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>DOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>DOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>OpenSent</td>
<td>DOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>OpenConfirm</td>
<td>DOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Established</td>
<td>UP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.BgpSessionMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To define the mapping I used the description from RFC1771 BGP Finite State Machine.

**Configuration and Usage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bgpPeerIp</td>
<td>IP address of the far end BGP peer session</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Amount of attempts to get the BGP peer state with SNMP</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time to wait for the SNMP agents response before trying a next attempt.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

To monitor the session state `Established` it is necessary to add a service to your poller configuration in `'$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/poller-configuration.xml'`, for example:
<!-- Example configuration poller-configuration.xml -->
<service name="BGP-Peer-99.99.99-AS65423" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="2" />
    <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
    <parameter key="port" value="161" />
    <parameter key="bgpPeerIp" value="99.99.99.99" />
</service>


Error code mapping

The BGP_PEER_LAST_ERROR_OID gives an error in HEX-code. To make it human readable a codemapping table is implemented:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error code</th>
<th>Error Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0100</td>
<td>Message Header Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0101</td>
<td>Message Header Error - Connection Not Synchronized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0102</td>
<td>Message Header Error - Bad Message Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0103</td>
<td>Message Header Error - Bad Message Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0200</td>
<td>OPEN Message Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0201</td>
<td>OPEN Message Error - Unsupported Version Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0202</td>
<td>OPEN Message Error - Bad Peer AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0203</td>
<td>OPEN Message Error - Bad BGP Identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0204</td>
<td>OPEN Message Error - Unsupported Optional Parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0205</td>
<td>OPEN Message Error (deprecated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0206</td>
<td>OPEN Message Error - Unacceptable Hold Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0300</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0301</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Malformed Attribute List</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0302</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Unrecognized Well-known Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0303</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Missing Well-known Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0304</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Attribute Flags Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0305</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Attribute Length Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0306</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Invalid ORIGIN Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0307</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error (deprecated)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Error codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error code</th>
<th>Error Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0308</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Invalid NEXT_HOP Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0309</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Optional Attribute Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>030A</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Invalid Network Field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>030B</td>
<td>UPDATE Message Error - Malformed AS_PATH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0400</td>
<td>Hold Timer Expired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0500</td>
<td>Finite State Machine Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0600</td>
<td>Cease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0601</td>
<td>Cease - Maximum Number of Prefixes Reached</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0602</td>
<td>Cease - Administrative Shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0603</td>
<td>Cease - Peer De-configured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0604</td>
<td>Cease - Administrative Reset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0605</td>
<td>Cease - Connection Rejected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0606</td>
<td>Cease - Other Configuration Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0607</td>
<td>Cease - Connection Collision Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0608</td>
<td>Cease - Out of Resources</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Instead of HEX-Code the error message will be displayed in the service down logmessage. To give some additional informations the logmessage contains also

- BGP-Peer Adminstate
- BGP-Peer Remote AS
- BGP-Peer established time in seconds

### Debugging

If you have problems to detect or monitor the BGP Session you can use the following command to figure out where the problem come from.

```
snmpwalk -v 2c -c <myCommunity> <myRouter2Monitor> .1.3.6.1.2.1.15.3.1.2.99.99.99.99
```

Replace 99.99.99.99 with your BGP-Peer IP. The result should be an Integer between 1 and 6.

### 3.6.3. BSFMonitor

This monitor runs a Bean Scripting Framework BSF compatible script to determine the status of a service. Users can write scripts to perform highly custom service checks. This monitor is not optimised for scale. It’s intended for a small number of custom checks or prototyping of monitors.
BSFMonitor vs SystemExecuteMonitor

The BSFMonitor avoids the overhead of fork(2) that is used by the SystemExecuteMonitor. BSFMonitor also grants access to a selection of OpenNMS Horizon internal methods and classes that can be used in the script.

Monitor facts

| Class Name | org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.BSFMonitor |
| Remote Enabled | false |

Configuration and Usage

Table 9. Monitor specific parameters for the BSFMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>file-name</td>
<td>Path to the script file.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run-type</td>
<td>one of eval or exec</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>eval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lang-class</td>
<td>The BSF language class, like groovy or beanshell.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>file-name extension is interpreted by default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file-extension</td>
<td>comma-separated list</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10. Beans which can be used in the script

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>map</td>
<td>Map&lt;String, Object&gt;</td>
<td>The map contains all various parameters passed to the monitor from the service definition in the poller-configuration.xml file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip_addr</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The IP address that is currently being polled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node_id</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>The Node ID of the node the ip_addr belongs to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node_label</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The Node Label of the node the ip_addr and service belongs to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svc_name</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The name of the service that is being polled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bsf_mon</td>
<td>BSSMonitor</td>
<td>The instance of the BSSMonitor object calling the script. Useful for logging via its log(String sev, String fmt, Object... args) method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>results</td>
<td>HashMap&lt;String, String&gt;</td>
<td>The script is expected to put its results into this object. The status indication should be set into the entry with key status. If the status is not OK, a key reason should contain a description of the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>times</td>
<td>LinkedHashMap&lt;String, Number&gt;</td>
<td>The script is expected to put one or more response times into this object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additionally every parameter added to the service definition in poller-configuration.xml is available as a String object in the script. The key attribute of the parameter represents the name of the String object and the value attribute represents the value of the String object.

- Please keep in mind, that these parameters are also accessible via the map bean.
- Avoid non-character names for parameters to avoid problems in the script languages.

**Response Codes**

The script has to provide a status code that represents the status of the associated service. The following status codes are defined:

Table 11. Status codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>Service is available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNK</td>
<td>Service status unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNR</td>
<td>Service is unresponsive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOK</td>
<td>Service is unavailable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Response time tracking**

By default the BSSMonitor tracks the whole time the script file consumes as the response time. If the response time should be persisted the response time add the following parameters:
RRD response time tracking for this service in poller-configuration.xml

<parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response" />

<parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="minimalbshbase" />

<parameter key="ds-name" value="myResponseTime" />

It is also possible to return one or many response times directly from the script. To add custom response times or override the default one, add entries to the times object. The entries are keyed with a String that names the datasource and have as values a number that represents the response time. To override the default response time datasource add an entry into times named response-time.

Timeout and Retry

The BSFMonitor does not perform any timeout or retry processing on its own. If retry and or timeout behaviour is required, it has to be implemented in the script itself.

Requirements for the script (run-types)

Depending on the run-type the script has to provide its results in different ways. For minimal scripts with very simple logic run-type eval is the simple option. Scripts running in eval mode have to return a String matching one of the status codes.

If your script is more than a one-liner, run-type exec is essentially required. Scripts running in exec mode need not return anything, but they have to add a status entry with a status code to the results object. Additionally, the results object can also carry a "reason":"message" entry that is used in non OK states.

Commonly used language settings

The BSF supports many languages, the following table provides the required setup for commonly used languages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>lang-class</th>
<th>bsf-engine</th>
<th>required library</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BeanShell</td>
<td>beanshell</td>
<td>bsh.util.BeanShellBSFEngine</td>
<td>supported by default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groovy</td>
<td>groovy</td>
<td>org.codehaus.groovy.bsf.GroovyEngine</td>
<td>groovy-all-[version].jar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jython</td>
<td>jython</td>
<td>org.apache.bsf.engines.jython.JythonEngine</td>
<td>jython-[version].jar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Example Bean Shell

**BeanShell example** poller-configuration.xml

```xml
<service name="MinimalBeanShell" interval="300000" user-defined="true" status="on">
  <parameter key="file-name" value="/tmp/MinimalBeanShell.bsh"/>
  <parameter key="bsf-engine" value="bsh.util.BeanShellBSFEngine"/>
</service>

<monitor service="MinimalBeanShell" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.BSFMonitor"/>
```

**BeanShell example** MinimalBeanShell.bsh script file

```bash
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "Starting MinimalBeanShell.bsh", null);
File testFile = new File("/tmp/TestFile");
if (testFile.exists()) {
  return "OK";
} else {
  results.put("reason", "file does not exist");
  return "NOK";
}
```

### Example Groovy

To use the Groovy language an additional library is required. Copy a compatible groovy-all.jar into to `opennms/lib` folder and restart *OpenNMS Horizon*. That makes *Groovy* available for the *BSFMonitor*.

**Groovy example** poller-configuration.xml with default run-type set to eval

```xml
<service name="MinimalGroovy" interval="300000" user-defined="true" status="on">
  <parameter key="file-name" value="/tmp/MinimalGroovy.groovy"/>
  <parameter key="bsf-engine" value="org.codehaus.groovy.bsf.GroovyEngine"/>
</service>

<monitor service="MinimalGroovy" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.BSFMonitor"/>
```
Groovy example MinimalGroovy.groovy script file for run-type eval

```java
testFile = new File("/tmp/TestFile");
if (testFile.exists()) {
    return "OK"
} else {
    results.put("reason", "file does not exist");
    return "NOK";
}
```

Groovy example poller-configuration.xml with run-type set to exec

```xml
<service name="MinimalGroovy" interval="300000" user-defined="true" status="on">
    <parameter key="file-name" value="/tmp/MinimalGroovy.groovy"/>
    <parameter key="bsf-engine" value="org.codehaus.groovy.bsf.GroovyEngine"/>
    <parameter key="run-type" value="exec"/>
</service>

<monitor service="MinimalGroovy" class-name="org.opennms.netmgmt.poller.monitors.BSFMonitor"/>
```

Groovy example MinimalGroovy.groovy script file for run-type set to exec

```java
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "Starting MinimalGroovy", null);
def testFile = new File("/tmp/TestFile");
if (testFile.exists()) {
    results.put("status", "OK")
} else {
    results.put("reason", "file does not exist");
    results.put("status", "NOK");
}
```

Example Jython

To use the Jython (Java implementation of Python) language an additional library is required. Copy a compatible `jython-x.y.z.jar` into the `opennms/lib` folder and restart OpenNMS Horizon. That makes Jython available for the BSFMonitor.
**Jython example** poller-configuration.xml with run-type exec

```xml
<service name="MinimalJython" interval="300000" user-defined="true" status="on">
  <parameter key="file-name" value="/tmp/MinimalJython.py"/>
  <parameter key="bsf-engine" value="org.apache.bsf.engines.jython.JythonEngine"/>
  <parameter key="run-type" value="exec"/>
</service>

<monitor service="MinimalJython" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.BSFMonitor"/>
```

**Jython example** MinimalJython.py script file for run-type set to exec

```python
from java.io import File

bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "Starting MinimalJython.py", None);
if (File("/tmp/TestFile").exists()):
    results.put("status", "OK")
else:
    results.put("reason", "file does not exist")
    results.put("status", "NOK")
```

- We have to use **run-type exec** here because *Jython* chokes on the import keyword in **eval** mode.

- As profit that this is really *Python*, notice the substitution of *Python*'s None value for Java's null in the log call.

**Advanced examples**

The following example references all beans that are exposed to the script, including a custom parameter.
<service name="MinimalGroovy" interval="30000" user-defined="true" status="on">
  <parameter key="file-name" value="/tmp/MinimalGroovy.groovy"/>
  <parameter key="bsf-engine" value="org.codehaus.groovy.bsf.GroovyEngine"/>
</service>

<!-- custom parameters (passed to the script) -->
<parameter key="myParameter" value="Hello Groovy"/>

<!-- optional for response time tracking -->
<parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
<parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="minimalgroovybase"/>
<parameter key="ds-name" value="minimalgroovyds"/>

<monitor service="MinimalGroovy" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.BSFMonitor"/>

Groovy example Bean referencing script file

bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "Starting MinimalGroovy", null);

//list of all available objects from the BSFMonitor
Map<String, Object> map = map;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- map ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", map.toString(), null);

String ip_addr = ip_addr;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- ip_addr ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", ip_addr, null);

int node_id = node_id;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- node_id ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", node_id.toString(), null);

String node_label = node_label;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- node_label ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", node_label, null);

String svc_name = svc_name;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- svc_name ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", svc_name, null);

org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.BSFMonitor bsf_monitor = bsf_monitor;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- bsf_monitor ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", bsf_monitor.toString(), null);

HashMap<String, String> results = results;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- results ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", results.toString(), null);
LinkedHashMap<String, Number> times = times;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- times ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", times.toString(), null);

// reading a parameter from the service definition
String myParameter = myParameter;
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "---- myParameter ----", null);
bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", myParameter, null);

// minimal example
def testFile = new File("/tmp/TestFile")
if (testFile.exists()) {
    bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "Done MinimalGroovy ---- OK ----", null);
    return "OK";
} else {
    results.put("reason", "file does not exist");
    bsf_monitor.log("ERROR", "Done MinimalGroovy ---- NOK ----", null);
    return "NOK";
}

3.6.4. CiscoIpSlaMonitor

This monitor can be used to monitor IP SLA configurations on your Cisco devices. This monitor supports the following SNMP OIDS from CISCO-RTT-MON-MIB:

- RTT_ADMIN_TAG_OID = .1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.42.1.2.1.1.3
- RTT_OPER_STATE_OID = .1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.42.1.2.9.1.10
- RTT_LATEST_OPERSENSE_OID = .1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.42.1.2.10.1.2
- RTT_ADMIN_THRESH_OID = .1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.42.1.2.1.1.5
- RTT_ADMIN_TYPE_OID = .1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.42.1.2.1.1.4
- RTT_LATEST_OID = .1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.42.1.2.10.1.1

The monitor can be run in two scenarios. The first one tests the `RTT_LATEST_OPERSENSE` which is a sense code for the completion status of the latest RTT operation. If the `RTT_LATEST_OPERSENSE` returns `ok(1)` the service is marked as `up`.

The second scenario is to monitor the configured threshold in the IP SLA config. If the `RTT_LATEST_OPERSENSE` returns with `overThreshold(3)` the service is marked `down`.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.CiscoIpSlaMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration and Usage

Table 13. Monitor-specific parameters for the CiscoIpSlaMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries to get the information from the SNMP agent before the service is marked as down.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the result from the SNMP agent before making the next attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin-tag</td>
<td>The tag attribute from your IP SLA configuration you want to monitor.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignore-thresh</td>
<td>Boolean indicates if just the status or configured threshold should be monitored.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example for HTTP and ICMP echo reply

In this example we configure an IP SLA entry to monitor Google’s website with HTTP GET from the Cisco device. We use 8.8.8.8 as our DNS resolver. In our example our SLA says we should reach Google’s website within 200ms. To advise co-workers that this monitor entry is used for monitoring, I set the owner to OpenNMS. The tag is used to identify the entry later in the SNMP table for monitoring.

Cisco device configuration for IP SLA instance for HTTP GET

```bash
ip sla monitor 1
type http operation get url http://www.google.de name-server 8.8.8.8
timeout 3000
threshold 200
owner OpenNMS
tag Google Website
ip sla monitor schedule 3 life forever start-time now
```

In the second example we configure a IP SLA to test if the IP address from www.opennms.org is reachable with ICMP from the perspective of the Cisco device. Like the example above we have a threshold and a timeout.

Cisco device configuration for IP SLA instance for ICMP monitoring.

```bash
ip sla 1
icmp-echo 64.146.64.212
timeout 3000
threshold 150
owner OpenNMS
tag OpenNMS Host
ip sla schedule 1 life forever start-time now
```
It’s not possible to reconfigure an IP SLA entry. If you want to change parameters, you have to delete the whole configuration and reconfigure it with your new parameters. Backup your Cisco configuration manually or take a look at RANCID.

To monitor both of the entries the configuration in poller-configuration.xml requires two service definition entries:

```xml
<service name="IP-SLA-WEB-Google" interval="300000"
user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2" />
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
  <parameter key="admin-tag" value="Google Website" />
  <parameter key="ignore-thresh" value="false" />
</service>

<service name="IP-SLA-PING-OpenNMS" interval="300000"
user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2" />
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
  <parameter key="admin-tag" value="OpenNMS Host" />
  <parameter key="ignore-thresh" value="true" />
</service>

<monitor service="IP-SLA-WEB-Google" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.CiscoIpSlaMonitor" />
<monitor service="IP-SLA-PING-OpenNMS" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.CiscoIpSlaMonitor" />

① Service is up if the IP SLA state is ok(1)
② Service is down if the IP SLA state is overThreshold(3)

### 3.6.5. CiscoPingMibMonitor

This poller monitor’s purpose is to create conceptual rows (entries) in the ciscoPingTable on Cisco IOS devices that support the CISCO-PING-MIB. These entries direct the remote IOS device to ping an IPv4 or IPv6 address with a configurable set of parameters. After the IOS device has completed the requested ping operations, the poller monitor queries the IOS device to determine the results. If the results indicate success according to the configured parameters in the service configuration, then the monitored service is reported as available and the results are available for optional time-series (RRD) storage. If the results indicate failure, the monitored service is reported unavailable with a descriptive reason code. If something goes wrong during the setup of the entry or the subsequent querying of its status, the monitored service is reported to be in an unknown state.
Unlike most poller monitors, the CiscoPingMibMonitor does not interpret the timeout and retries parameters to determine when a poll attempt has timed out or whether it should be attempted again. The packet-count and packet-timeout parameters instead service this purpose from the perspective of the remote IOS device.

**Supported MIB OIDs from CISCO_PING_MIB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingEntry</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingSerialNumber</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingProtocol</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingAddress</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingPacketCount</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingPacketSize</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingPacketTimeout</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingDelay</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingTrapOnCompletion</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingSentPackets</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingReceivedPackets</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingMinRtt</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingAvgRtt</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingMaxRtt</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingCompleted</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingEntryOwner</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingEntryStatus</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoPingVrfName</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.16.1.1.1.17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prerequisites**

- One or more *Cisco* devices running an *IOS* image of recent vintage; any 12.2 or later image is probably fine. Even very low-end devices appear to support the CISCO-PING-MIB.

- The *IOS* devices that will perform the remote pings must be configured with an *SNMP write community* string whose source address access-list includes the address of the OpenNMS Horizon server and whose MIB view (if any) includes the OID of the ciscoPingTable.

- The corresponding *SNMP write community* string must be specified in the write-community attribute of either the top-level `<snmp-config>` element of `snmp-config.xml` or a `<definition>` child element that applies to the SNMP-primary interface of the *IOS* device(s) that will perform the remote pings.

**Scalability concerns**

This monitor spends a fair amount of time sleeping while it waits for the remote *IOS* device to complete the requested ping operations. The monitor is pessimistic in calculating the delay between creation of the ciscoPingTable entry and its first attempt to retrieve the results of that entry’s ping operations—it will always wait at least \((\text{packet-count} \times (\text{packet-timeout} + \text{packet-delay}))\) milliseconds before even checking whether the remote pings have completed. It’s therefore prone to hogging poller threads if used with large values for the packet-count, packet-timeout, and/or packet-delay parameters. Keep these values as small as practical to avoid tying up poller threads.
unnecessarily.

This monitor always uses the current time in whole seconds since the UNIX epoch as the instance identifier of the `ciscoPingTable` entries that it creates. The object that holds this identifier is a signed 32-bit integer type, precluding a finer resolution. It's probably a good idea to mix in the least-significant byte of the millisecond-accurate time as a substitute for that of the whole-second-accurate value to avoid collisions. **IOS** seems to clean up entries in this table within a manner of minutes after their ping operations have completed.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.CiscoPingMibMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 14. Monitor specific parameters for the CiscoPingMibMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>A timeout, in milliseconds, that should override the SNMP timeout specified in <code>snmp-config.xml</code>. Do not use without a very good reason to do so.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from <code>snmp-config.xml</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries to attempt if the initial attempt times out. Overrides the equivalent value from <code>snmp-config.xml</code>. Do not use unless really needed.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from <code>snmp-config.xml</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>SNMP protocol version (1, 2c, or 3) to use for operations performed by this service monitor. Do not use with out a very good reason to do so.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from <code>snmp-config.xml</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packet-count</td>
<td>Number of ping packets that the remote <strong>IOS</strong> device should send.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packet-size</td>
<td>Size, in bytes, of each ping packet that the remote <strong>IOS</strong> device should send.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packet-timeout</td>
<td>Timeout, in milliseconds, of each ping packet sent by the remote <strong>IOS</strong> device.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packet-delay</td>
<td>Delay, in milliseconds, between ping packets sent by the remote <strong>IOS</strong> device.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entry-owner</td>
<td>String value to set as the value of <code>ciscoPingEntryOwner</code> of entries created for this service.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>OpenNMS <strong>CiscoPingMibMonitor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrf-name</td>
<td>String value to set as the VRF (VLAN) name in whose context the remote IOS device should perform the pings for this service.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>empty String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy-node-id</td>
<td>Numeric database identifier of the node whose primary SNMP interface should be used as the proxy for this service. If specified along with the related proxy-node-foreign-source, proxy-node-foreign-id, and/or proxy-ip-addr, this parameter will be the effective one.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy-node-foreign-source</td>
<td>foreign-source name and foreign-ID of the node whose primary SNMP interface should be used as the &quot;proxy&quot; for this service. These two parameters are corequisites. If they appear along with the related proxy-ip-addr, these parameters will be the effective ones.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy-node-foreign-id</td>
<td></td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy-ip-addr</td>
<td>IP address of the interface that should be used as the proxy for this service. Effective only if none of proxy-node-id, proxy-node-foreign-source, nor proxy-node-foreign-id appears alongside this parameter. A value of ${ipaddr} will be substituted with the IP address of the interface on which the monitored service appears.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target-ip-addr</td>
<td>IP address that the remote IOS device should ping. A value of ${ipaddr} will be substituted with the IP address of the interface on which the monitored service appears.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>success-percent</td>
<td>A whole-number percentage of pings that must succeed (from the perspective of the remote IOS device) in order for this service to be considered available. As an example, if packet-count is left at its default value of 5 but you wish the service to be considered available even if only one of those five pings is successful, then set this parameter's value to 20.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rrd-repository</td>
<td>Base directory of an RRD repository in which to store this service monitor’s response-time samples</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ds-name</td>
<td>Name of the RRD datasource (DS) name in which to store this service monitor's response-time samples; rrd-base-name Base name of the RRD file (minus the .rrd or .jrb file extension) within the specified rrd-repository path in which this service monitor's response-time samples will be persisted</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is optional just if you can use variables in the configuration

**Table 15. Variables which can be used in the configuration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${ipaddr}</td>
<td>This value will be substituted with the IP address of the interface on which the monitored service appears.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example: Ping the same non-routable address from all routers of customer Foo**

A service provider's client, Foo Corporation, has network service at multiple locations. At each Foo location, a point-of-sale system is statically configured at IPv4 address 192.168.255.1. Foo wants to be notified any time a point-of-sale system becomes unreachable. Using an OpenNMS Horizon remote location monitor is not feasible. All of Foo Corporation’s CPE routers must be Cisco IOS devices in order to achieve full coverage in this scenario.

One approach to this requirement is to configure all of Foo Corporation's premise routers to be in the surveillance categories Customer_Foo, CPE, and Routers, and to use a filter to create a poller package that applies only to those routers. We will use the special value ${ipaddr} for the proxy-ip-addr parameter so that the remote pings will be provisioned on each Foo CPE router. Since we want each Foo CPE router to ping the same IP address 192.168.255.1, we statically list that value for the target-ip-addr address.
Example: Ping from a single IOS device routable address of each router of customer Bar

A service provider’s client, Bar Limited, has network service at multiple locations. While OpenNMS Horizon world-class service assurance is generally sufficient, Bar also wants to be notified any time a premise router at one of their locations unreachable from the perspective of an IOS device in Bar’s main data center. Some or all of the Bar Limited CPE routers may be non-Cisco devices in this scenario.

To meet this requirement, our approach is to configure Bar Limited’s premise routers to be in the surveillance categories Customer_Bar, CPE, and Routers, and to use a filter to create a poller package that applies only to those routers. This time, though, we will use the special value ${ipaddr} not in the proxy-ip-addr parameter but in the target-ip-addr parameter so that the remote pings will be performed for each Bar CPE router. Since we want the same IOS device 20.11.5.11 to ping the CPE routers, we statically list that value for the proxy-ip-addr address. Example poller-configuration.xml additions
<package name="ciscoping-bar-cpe">
<filter>catincCustomer_Bar & catincCPE & catincRouters</filter>
<include-range begin="0.0.0.0" end="254.254.254.254"/>
<rrd step="300">
  <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:1:2016</rra>
  <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:12:1488</rra>
  <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:288:366</rra>
  <rra>RRA:MAX:0.5:288:366</rra>
  <rra>RRA:MIN:0.5:288:366</rra>
</rrd>
<service name="BarCentral" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="ciscoping"/>
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="ciscoping"/>
  <parameter key="proxy-ip-addr" value="20.11.5.11"/>
  <parameter key="target-ip-addr" value="${ipaddr}"/>
</service>
<downtime interval="30000" begin="0" end="300000"/>
<downtime interval="300000" begin="300000" end="43200000"/>
<downtime interval="600000" begin="43200000" end="43200000"/>
<downtime begin="43200000" delete="true"/>
</package>

<monitor service="BarCentral" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.CiscoPingMibMonitor"/>

3.6.6. CitrixMonitor

This monitor is used to test if a Citrix® Server or XenApp Server® is providing the Independent Computing Architecture (ICA) protocol on TCP 1494. The monitor opens a TCP socket and tests the greeting banner returns with ICA, otherwise the service is unavailable.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.CitrixMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 16. Monitor specific parameters for the CitrixMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Amount of attempts opening a connection and try to get the greeting banner before the service goes down</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time to wait retrieving the greeting banner ICA from TCP connection before trying a next attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000 ms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>TCP port where the ICA protocol is listening.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>1494</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have configure the Metaframe Presentation Server Client using Session Reliability, the TCP port is 2598 instead of 1494. You can find additional information on CTX104147. It is not verified if the monitor works in this case.

### Examples

The following example configures OpenNMS Horizon to monitor the ICA protocol on TCP 1494 with 2 retries and waiting 5 seconds for each retry.

```xml
<service name="Citrix-TCP-ICA" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2" />
  <parameter key="timeout" value="5000" />
</service>

<monitor service="Citrix-TCP-ICA" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.CitrixMonitor" />
```

### 3.6.7. DhcpMonitor

This monitor is used to monitor the availability and functionality of DHCP servers. This monitor has two parts, the first one is the monitor class DhcpMonitor executed by Pollerd and the second part is a background daemon Dhcpd running inside the OpenNMS Horizon JVM and listening for DHCP responses. A DHCP server is tested by sending a DISCOVER message. If the DHCP server responds with an OFFER the service is marked as up. The Dhcpd background daemon is disabled by default and has to be activated in service-configuration.xml in OpenNMS Horizon by setting service enabled="true". The behavior for testing the DHCP server can be modified in the dhcp-configuration.xml configuration file.

It is required to install the opennms-plugin-protocol-dhcp before you can use this feature.

**Installing the opennms-plugin-protocol-dhcp package**

```bash
{apt-get,yum} install {opennms-package-base-name}-plugin-protocol-dhcp
```

If you try to start OpenNMS Horizon without the opennms-plugin-protocol-dhcp you will see the following error message in output.log:
An error occurred while attempting to start the "OpenNMS:Name=Dhcpd" service (class org.opennms.netmgt.dhcpd.jmx.Dhcpd). Shutting down and exiting.

java.lang.ClassNotFoundException: org.opennms.netmgt.dhcpd.jmx.Dhcpd

Make sure no DHCP client is running on the OpenNMS Horizon server and using port UDP/68. If UDP/68 is already in use, you will find an error message in the manager.log. You can test if a process is listening on udp/68 with `sudo ss -lnpu sport = :68`.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.protocols.dhcp.monitor.DhcpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 17. Service monitor parameters configured in `poller-configuration.xml`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries before the service is marked as down</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the DHCP response from the server</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rrd-repository</td>
<td>The location to write RRD data. Generally, you will not want to change this from default</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>$OPENNMS_HOME/share/rrd/response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rrd-base-name</td>
<td>The name of the RRD file to write (minus the extension, .rrd or .jrb)</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>dhcp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ds-name</td>
<td>This is the name as reference for this particular data source in the RRD file</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>dhcp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dhcpd configuration

Table 18. Dhcpd parameters in `dhcp-configuration.xml`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>Defines the port your dhcp server is using</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>5818</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macAddress</td>
<td>The MAC address which OpenNMS Horizon uses for a dhcp request</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>00:06:00:BE:9C:B2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
myIpAddress

This parameter will usually be set to the IP address of the OpenNMS Horizon server, which puts the DHCP poller in relay mode as opposed to broadcast mode. In relay mode, the DHCP server being polled will unicast its responses directly back to the IP address specified by myIpAddress rather than broadcasting its responses. This allows DHCP servers to be polled even though they are not on the same subnet as the OpenNMS Horizon server, and without the aid of an external relay.

Usage: myIpAddress="10.11.12.13" or myIpAddress="broadcast"

extendedMode

When extendedMode is false, the DHCP poller will send a DISCOVER and expect an OFFER in return. When extendedMode is true, the DHCP poller will first send a DISCOVER. If no valid response is received it will send an INFORM. If no valid response is received it will then send a REQUEST. OFFER, ACK, and NAK are all considered valid responses in extendedMode.

Usage: extendedMode="true" or extendedMode="false"

requestIpAddress

This parameter only applies to REQUEST queries sent to the DHCP server when extendedMode is true. If an IP address is specified, that IP address will be requested in the query. If targetHost is specified, the DHCP server's own IP address will be requested. Since a well-managed server will probably not respond to a request for its own IP, this parameter can also be set to targetSubnet. This is similar to targetHost except the DHCP server's IP address is incremented or decremented by 1 to obtain an ip address that is on the same subnet. (The resulting address will not be on the same subnet if the DHCP server's subnet is a /32 or /31. Otherwise, the algorithm used should be reliable.)

Usage: requestIpAddress="10.77.88.99" or requestIpAddress="targetHost" or requestIpAddress="targetSubnet"

Figure 14. Visualization of DHCP message flow in broadcast mode
Example testing DHCP server in the same subnet

Example configuration how to configure the monitor in the poller-configuration.xml. The monitor will try to send in maximum 3 DISCOVER messages and waits 3 seconds for the DHCP server OFFER message.

Step 1: Configure a DHCP service in poller-configuration.xml

```xml
<service name="DHCP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2" />
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response" />
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="dhcp" />
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="dhcp" />
</service>

<monitor service="DHCP" class-name="org.opennms.protocols.dhcp.monitor.DhcpMonitor"/>
```

Step 2: Enable the OpenNMS Horizon Dhcpd daemon in service-configuration.xml

```xml
<service enabled="true">
  <name>OpenNMS:Name=Dhcpd</name>
  <class-name>org.opennms.netmgt.dhcpd.jmx.Dhcpd</class-name>
  <invoke method="start" pass="1" at="start"/>
  <invoke method="status" pass="0" at="status"/>
  <invoke method="stop" pass="0" at="stop"/>
</service>
```
Step 3: Configure Dhcpd to test a DHCP server in the same subnet as the OpenNMS Horizon server.

```
<DhcpdConfiguration
  port="5818"
  macAddress="00:06:0D:BE:9C:B2"
  myIpAddress="broadcast"
  extendedMode="false"
  requestIpAddress="127.0.0.1">
</DhcpdConfiguration>
```

Example testing DHCP server in a different subnet in extended mode

You can use the same monitor in `poller-configuration.xml` as in the example above.

```
Configure Dhcpd to test DHCP server in a different subnet. The OFFER from the DHCP server is sent to myIpAddress.

<DhcpdConfiguration
  port="5818"
  macAddress="00:06:0D:BE:9C:B2"
  myIpAddress="10.4.1.234"
  extendedMode="true"
  requestIpAddress="targetSubnet">
</DhcpdConfiguration>
```

If in `extendedMode`, the time required to complete the poll for an unresponsive node is increased by a factor of 3. Thus it is a good idea to limit the number of retries to a small number.

3.6.8. DiskUsageMonitor

The DiskUsageMonitor monitor can be used to test the amount of free space available on certain storages of a node.

The monitor gets information about the available free storage spaces available by inspecting the `hrStorageTable` of the `HOST-RESOURCES-MIB`.

A storage’s description (as found in the corresponding `hrStorageDescr` object) must match the criteria specified by the `disk` and `match-type` parameters to be monitored.

A storage’s available free space is calculated using the corresponding `hrStorageSize` and `hrStorageUsed` objects.

The `hrStorageUsed` doesn’t account for filesystem reserved blocks (i.e. for the super-user), so DiskUsageMonitor will report the service as unavailable only when the amount of free disk space is actually lower than `free` minus the percentage of reserved filesystem blocks.
This monitor uses **SNMP** to accomplish its work. Therefore systems against which it is to be used must have an SNMP agent supporting the **HOST-RESOURCES-MIB** installed and configured. Most modern **SNMP agents**, including most distributions of the **Net-SNMP agent** and the **SNMP service** that ships with **Microsoft Windows**, support this **MIB**. Out-of-box support for **HOST-RESOURCES-MIB** among commercial **Unix** operating systems may be somewhat spotty.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DiskUsageMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false, relies on SNMP configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 19. Monitor specific parameters for the DiskUsageMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>disk</td>
<td>A pattern that a storage's description (<code>hrStorageDescr</code>) must match to be taken into account.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free</td>
<td>The minimum amount of free space that storages matching the criteria must have available. This parameter is evaluated as a percent of the storage's reported maximum capacity.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match-type</td>
<td>The way how the pattern specified by the <code>disk</code> parameter must be compared to storages description. Must be one of the following symbolic operators:</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>exact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>endswith</code>: The <code>disk</code> parameter’s value is evaluated as a string that storages' description must end with;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>exact</code>: The <code>disk</code> parameter’s value is evaluated as a string that storages’ description must exactly match;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>regex</code>: The <code>disk</code> parameter’s value is evaluated as a regular expression that storages’ description must match;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>startswith</code>: The <code>disk</code> parameter’s value is evaluated as a string that storages’ description must start with.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Comparisons are case-sensitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>Destination port where the SNMP requests shall be sent.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retries</td>
<td>Deprecated. Same as <code>retry</code>. Parameter <code>retry</code> takes precedence when both are set.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of polls to attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for retrieving the values.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

```xml
<service name="DiskUsage-home" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="disk" value="/home"/>
  <parameter key="match-type" value="endsWith"/>
  <parameter key="free" value="5"/>
</service>
```

DiskUsageMonitor vs thresholds

Storages' available free space can also be monitored using thresholds if you are already collecting these data.

3.6.9. DnsMonitor

This monitor is build to test the availability of the DNS service on remote IP interfaces. The monitor tests the service availability by sending a DNS query for A resource record types against the DNS server to test.

The monitor is marked as up if the DNS Server is able to send a valid response to the monitor. For multiple records it is possible to test if the number of responses are within a given boundary.

The monitor can be simulated with the command line tool `host:`
~ % host -v -t a www.google.com 8.8.8.8
Trying "www.google.com"
Using domain server:
Name: 8.8.8.8
Address: 8.8.8.8#53
Aliases:

;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 9324
;; flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 5, AUTHORITY: 0, ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
www.google.com.            IN  A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.google.com.     283 IN  A   74.125.232.17
www.google.com.     283 IN  A   74.125.232.20
www.google.com.     283 IN  A   74.125.232.19
www.google.com.     283 IN  A   74.125.232.16
www.google.com.     283 IN  A   74.125.232.18

Received 112 bytes from 8.8.8.8#53 in 41 ms

TIP: This monitor is intended for testing the availability of a DNS service. If you want to monitor the DNS resolution of some of your nodes from a client's perspective, please use the DNSResolutionMonitor.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DnsMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 20. Monitor specific parameters for the DnsMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries before the service is marked as down</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the A Record response from the server</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>UDP Port for the DNS server</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lookup</td>
<td>DNS A Record for lookup test</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>localhost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fatal-response-codes</td>
<td>A comma-separated list of numeric DNS response codes that will be considered fatal if present in the server's response. Default value is 2 corresponds to Server Failed. A list of codes and their meanings is found in RFC 2929</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min-answers</td>
<td>Mininal number of records in the DNS server response for the given lookup</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max-answers</td>
<td>Maximal number of records in the DNS server response for the given lookup</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The given examples shows how to monitor if the IP interface from a given DNS server resolves a DNS request. This service should be bound to a DNS server which should be able to give a valid DNS response for DNS request `www.google.com`. The service is up if the DNS server gives between 1 and 10 A record responses.

**Example configuration monitoring DNS request for a given server for `www.google.com`**

```xml
<service name="DNS-www.google.com" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="lookup" value="www.google.com" />
  <parameter key="fatal-response-code" value="2" />
  <parameter key="min-answers" value="1" />
  <parameter key="max-answers" value="10" />
</service>

<monitor service="DNS-www.google.com" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DnsMonitor" />
```

### 3.6.10. DNSResolutionMonitor

The DNS resolution monitor, tests if the node label of an OpenNMS Horizon node can be resolved. This monitor uses the name resolver configuration from the poller configuration or from the operating system where OpenNMS Horizon is running on. It can be used to test a client behavior for a given host name. For example: Create a node with the node label `www.google.com` and an IP interface. Assigning the DNS resolution monitor on the IP interface will test if `www.google.com` can be resolved using the DNS configuration defined by the poller. The response from the A record lookup can be any address, it is not verified with the IP address on the OpenNMS Horizon IP interface where the monitor is assigned to.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DNSResolutionMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 21. Monitor specific parameters for the DNSResolutionMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>resolution-type</td>
<td>Type of record for the node label test. Allowed values: v4 for A records,</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>either</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>v6 for AAAA record, both A and AAAA record must be available, either A or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AAAA record must be available.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nameserver</td>
<td>The DNS server to query for the records.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>Use the servers defined by the system running OpenNMS Horizon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Amount of attempts to resolve the node label before the service goes down</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time to wait for a A and/or AAAA record from the system configured DNS server before trying a next attempt.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example shows the possibilities monitoring IPv4 and/or IPv6 for the service configuration:

```xml
<!-- Assigned service test if the node label is resolved for an A record -->
<service name="DNS-Resolution-v4" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="2000"/>
  <parameter key="resolution-type" value="v4"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="dns-res-v4"/>
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="dns-res-v4"/>
</service>

<!-- Assigned service test if the node label is resolved for an AAAA record using a specific DNS server -->
<service name="DNS-Resolution-v6" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="2000"/>
  <parameter key="resolution-type" value="v6"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="dns-res-v6"/>
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="dns-res-v6"/>
  <parameter key="nameserver" value="8.8.8.8"/>
</service>

<!-- Assigned service test if the node label is resolved for an AAAA record AND A
```
<service name="DNS-Resolution-v4-and-v6" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="2000"/>
    <parameter key="resolution-type" value="both"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="dns-res-both"/>
    <parameter key="ds-name" value="dns-res-both"/>
</service>

<!-- Assigned service test if the node label is resolved for an AAAA record OR A record -->
<service name="DNS-Resolution-v4-or-v6" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="2000"/>
    <parameter key="resolution-type" value="either"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="dns-res-either"/>
    <parameter key="ds-name" value="dns-res-either"/>
</service>

<monitor service="DNS-Resolution-v4" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DNSResolutionMonitor" />
<monitor service="DNS-Resolution-v6" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DNSResolutionMonitor" />
<monitor service="DNS-Resolution-v4-and-v6" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DNSResolutionMonitor" />
<monitor service="DNS-Resolution-v4-or-v6" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.DNSResolutionMonitor" />

To have response time graphs for the name resolution you have to configure RRD graphs for the given ds-names (dns-res-v4, dns-res-v6, dns-res-both, dns-res-either) in '$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/response-graph.properties'.

**DNSResolutionMonitor vs DnsMonitor**

The DNSResolutionMonitor is used to measure the availability and record outages of a name resolution from client perspective. The service is mainly used for websites or similar public available resources. It can be used in combination with the Page Sequence Monitor to give a hint if a website isn't available for DNS reasons.

The DnsMonitor on the other hand is a test against a specific DNS server. In OpenNMS Horizon the DNS server is the node and the DnsMonitor will send a lookup request for a given A record to the DNS server IP address. The service goes down if the DNS server doesn't have a valid A record in his zone database or as some other issues resolving A records.
3.6.11. FtpMonitor

The FtpMonitor is able to validate ftp connection dial-up processes. The monitor can test ftp server on multiple ports and specific login data.

The service using the FtpMonitor is up if the FTP server responds with return codes between 200 and 299. For special cases the service is also marked as up for 425 and 530.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.FtpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 22. Monitor specific parameters for the FtpMonitor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a valid FTP response/response-text</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for TCP connection establishment.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>A list of TCP ports to which connection shall be tried.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>20,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>This parameter is meant to be used together with the user parameter to perform basic authentication. This parameter specify to password to be used. The user and password parameters are ignored when the basic-authentication parameter is defined.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userid</td>
<td>This parameter is meant to be used together with the password parameter to perform basic authentication. This parameter specify to user ID to be used. The userid and password parameters are ignored when the basic-authentication parameter is defined.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

Some example configuration how to configure the monitor in the 'poller-configuration.xml'
Hint

Comment from FtpMonitor source

Also want to accept the following ERROR message generated by some FTP servers following a QUIT command without a previous successful login: "530 QUIT : User not logged in. Please login with USER and PASS first."

Also want to accept the following ERROR message generated by some FTP servers following a QUIT command without a previously successful login: "425 Session is disconnected."

See also: http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc959

3.6.12. HostResourceSwRunMonitor

This monitor test the running state of one or more processes. It does this via SNMP by inspecting the hrSwRunTable of the HOST-RESOURCES-MIB. The test is done by matching a given process as hrSwRunName against the numeric value of the hrSwRunState.

This monitor uses SNMP to accomplish its work. Therefore systems against which it is to be used must have an SNMP agent installed and configured. Furthermore, the SNMP agent on the system must support the HOST-RESOURCES-MIB. Most modern SNMP agents, including most distributions of the Net-SNMP agent and the SNMP service that ships with Microsoft Windows, support this MIB. Out-of-box support for HOST-RESOURCES-MIB among commercial Unix operating systems may be somewhat spotty.

Monitor facts

| Class Name                              | org.opennms.netmg.poller.monitors.HostResourceSwRunMonitor |
Remote Enabled  false

## Configuration and Usage

### Table 23. Monitor specific parameters for the HostResourceSwRunMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The port of the SNMP agent of the server to test.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a valid response before marking the service as down.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds waiting for the SNMP response for the process run state from the agent.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service-name</td>
<td>The name of the process to be monitored. This parameter’s value is case-sensitive and is evaluated as an exact match.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match-all</td>
<td>If the process name appears multiple times in the hrSwRunTable, and this parameter is set to true, then all instances of the named process must match the value specified for run-level.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run-level</td>
<td>The maximum allowable value of hrSWRunStatus among running(1), runnable(2) = waiting for resource notRunnable(3) = loaded but waiting for event invalid(4) = not loaded</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service-name-oid</td>
<td>The numeric object identifier (OID) from which process names are queried. Defaults to hrSwRunName and should never be changed under normal circumstances. That said, changing it to hrSwRunParameters (.1.3.6.1.2.1.25.4.2.1.5) is often helpful when dealing with processes running under Java Virtual Machines which all have the same process name java.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.2 5.4.2.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service-status-oid</td>
<td>The numeric object identifier (OID) from which run status is queried. Defaults to hrSwRunStatus and should never be changed under normal circumstances.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.2 5.4.2.1.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to monitor the process called `httpd` running on a server using this monitor. The configuration in `poller-configuration.xml` has to be defined as the following:
<service name="Process-httpd" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="3"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="service-name" value="httpd"/>
  <parameter key="run-level" value="3"/>
  <parameter key="match-all" value="true"/>
</service>

<monitor service="Process-httpd" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.HostResourceSwRunMonitor"/>

① Name of the process on the system
② Test the state if the process is in a valid state, i.e. have a run-level no higher than notRunnable(3)
③ If the httpd process runs multiple times the test is done for each instance of the process.

3.6.13. HttpMonitor

The HTTP monitor tests the response of an HTTP server on a specific HTTP 'GET' command. During the poll, an attempt is made to connect on the specified port(s). The monitor can test web server on multiple ports. By default the a test is made against port 80, 8080 and 8888. If the connection request is successful, an HTTP 'GET' command is sent to the interface. The response is parsed and a return code extracted and verified.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.HttpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 24. Monitor specific parameters for the HttpMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basic-authentication</td>
<td>Authentication credentials to perform basic authentication. Credentials should comply to RFC1945 section 11.1, without the Base64 encoding part. That's: be a string made of the concatenation of: 1- the user ID; 2- a colon; 3- the password. basic-authentication takes precedence over the user and password parameters.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>header[0-9]+</td>
<td>Additional headers to be sent along with the request. Example of valid parameter's names are header0, header1 and header180. header is not a valid parameter name.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host-name</td>
<td>Specify the Host header's value.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nodelabel-host-name</td>
<td>If the host-name parameter isn't set and the resolve-ip parameter is set to false, then OpenNMS Horizon will use the node's label to set the Host header's value if this parameter is set to true. Otherwise, OpenNMS Horizon will fall back using the node interface's IP address as Host header value.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>This parameter is meant to be used together with the user parameter to perform basic authentication. This parameter specify to password to be used. The user and password parameters are ignored when the basic-authentication parameter is defined.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>A list of TCP ports to which connection shall be tried.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>80,8080,8888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a valid HTTP response/response-text</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resolve-ip</td>
<td>If the host-name parameter isn't set and this parameter is set to true, OpenNMS Horizon will use DNS to resolve the node interface's IP address, and use the result to set the Host header's value. When set to false and the host-name parameter isn't set, OpenNMS Horizon will try to use the nodelabel-host-name parameter to set the Host header's value.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>response</td>
<td>A comma-separated list of acceptable HTTP response code ranges. Example: 200-202,299</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>If the url parameter is set to /, the default value for this parameter is 100-499, otherwise it's 100-399.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>response-text</td>
<td>Text to look for in the response body. This will be matched against every line, and it will be considered a success at the first match. If there is a ~ at the beginning of the parameter, the rest of the string will be used as a regular expression pattern match, otherwise the match will be a substring match. The regular expression match is anchored at the beginning and end of the line, so you will likely need to put a .* on both sides of your pattern unless you are going to be matching on the entire line.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for TCP connection establishment.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>URL to be retrieved via the HTTP 'GET' command</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>This parameter is meant to be used together with the password parameter to perform basic authentication. This parameter specify to user ID to be used. The user and password parameters are ignored when the basic-authentication parameter is defined.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user-agent</td>
<td>Allows you to set the User-Agent HTTP header (see also RFC2616 section 14.43).</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>OpenNMS HttpMonitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbose</td>
<td>When set to true, full communication between client and the webserver will be logged (with a log level of DEBUG).</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
Testing filtering proxies with HttpMonitor

If you have a filtering proxy server that is supposed to allow retrieval of some URLs but deny others, you can use the HttpMonitor to verify this behavior.

Let's say that our proxy server is running on TCP port 3128, and that we should always be able to retrieve http://www.opennms.org/ but never http://www.myspace.com/ (hey, this is a workplace after all!). To test this behaviour, one could create the following service monitors:

If it is required to HTTP POST any arbitrary content to a remote URI, the HttpPostMonitor can be used. A use case is to HTTP POST to a SOAP endpoint.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.HttpPostMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 25. Monitor specific parameters for the HttpPostMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>payload</td>
<td>The body of the POST, for example properly escaped XML.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auth-password</td>
<td>The password to use for HTTP BASIC auth.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auth-username</td>
<td>The username to use for HTTP BASIC auth.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banner</td>
<td>A string that is matched against the response of the HTTP POST. If the output contains the banner, the service is determined as up. Specify a regex by starting with ~.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charset</td>
<td>Set the character set for the POST.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>UTF-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mimetype</td>
<td>Set the mimetype for the POST.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>text/xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The port for the web server where the POST is send to.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheme</td>
<td>The connection scheme to use.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>http</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usesSslFilter</td>
<td>Enables or disables the SSL certificate validation. true - false</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uri</td>
<td>The uri to use during the POST.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example would create a POST that contains the payload *World*.

```xml
<service name="MyServlet" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="banner" value="Hello"/>
  <parameter key="port" value="8080"/>
  <parameter key="uri" value="/MyServlet"/>
  <parameter key="payload" value="World"/>
  <parameter key="retry" value="1"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="30000"/>
</service>

<monitor service="MyServlet" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.HttpPostMonitor"/>
```

The resulting POST looks like this:

```
POST /MyServlet HTTP/1.1
Content-Type: text/xml; charset=utf-8
Host: <ip_addr_of_interface>:8080
Connection: Keep-Alive

World
```
3.6.15. HttpsMonitor

The HTTPS monitor tests the response of an SSL-enabled HTTP server. The HTTPS monitor is an SSL-enabled extension of the HTTP monitor with a default TCP port value of 443. All HttpMonitor parameters apply, so please refer to HttpMonitor’s documentation for more information.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.HttpsMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 26. Monitor specific parameters for the HttpsMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>A list of TCP ports to which connection shall be tried.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

```xml
<!-- Test HTTPS service on port 8443 -->
<service name="HTTPS" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="port" value="8443"/>
  <parameter key="url" value="/"/>
</service>

<monitor service="HTTPS" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.HttpsMonitor"/>
```

3.6.16. IcmpMonitor

The ICMP monitor tests for ICMP service availability by sending echo request ICMP messages. The service is considered available when the node sends back an echo reply ICMP message within the specified amount of time.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.IcmpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true with some restrictions (see below)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 27. Monitor specific parameters for the IcmpMonitor
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>packet-size</td>
<td>Number of bytes of the ICMP packet to send.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for a response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thresholding-enabled</td>
<td>Enables ICMP thresholding</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

```
<service name="ICMP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="icmp"/>
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="icmp"/>
</service>
```

**Note on Remote Poller**

The IcmpMonitor needs the JNA ICMP implementation to function on remote poller. Though, corner cases exist where the IcmpMonitor monitor won't work on remote poller. Examples of such corner cases are: Windows when the remote poller isn't running has administrator, and Linux on ARM / Rasperry Pi. JNA is the default ICMP implementation used in the remote poller.

**3.6.17. ImapMonitor**

This monitor checks if an IMAP server is functional. The test is done by initializing a very simple IMAP conversation. The ImapMonitor establishes a TCP connection, sends a logout command and test the IMAP server responses.

The behavior can be simulated with `telnet`:

```
telnet mail.myserver.de 143
Trying 62.108.41.197...
Connected to mail.myserver.de.
Escape character is '^]'.
* OK [CAPABILITY IMAP4rev1 LITERAL+ SASL-IR LOGIN-REFERRALS ID ENABLE IDLE STARTTLS
LOGINDISABLED] Dovecot ready. ①
ONMSPOLLER LOGOUT ②
* BYE Logging out ③
ONMSPOLLER OK Logout completed.
Connection closed by foreign host.
```

① Test IMAP server banner, it has to start * OK to be up
② Sending a `ONMSPOLLER LOGOUT`

③ Test server responds with, it has to start with * `BYE` to be *up*.

If one of the tests in the sample above fails the service is marked *down*.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.ImapMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 28. Monitor specific parameters for the ImapMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a valid IMAP response</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait retrieving the banner from TCP connection before trying a next attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The port of the IMAP server.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

Some example configuration how to configure the monitor in the `poller-configuration.xml`

```xml
<service name="IMAP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="1"/>
  <parameter key="port" value="143"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
</service>

<monitor service="IMAP" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.ImapMonitor"/>
```

3.6.18. **JCifsMonitor**

This monitor allows to test a file sharing service based on the CIFS/SMB protocol.

⚠️ This monitor is not installed by default. You have to install `opennms-plugin-protocol-cifs` from your OpenNMS Horizon installation repository.

With the `JCIFS` monitor you have different possibilities to test the availability of the `JCIFS` service:

With the *JCifsMonitor* it is possible to run tests for the following use cases:
• share is available in the network
• a given file exists in the share
• a given folder exists in the share
• a given folder should contain at least one (1) file
• a given folder folder should contain no (0) files
• by testing on files and folders, you can use a regular expression to ignore specific file and folder names from the test

A network resource in SMB like a file or folder is addressed as a **UNC Path**.

`\server\share\folder\file.txt`

The Java implementation *jCIFS*, which implements the *CIFS/SMB* network protocol, uses *SMB URLs* to access the network resource. The same resource as in our example would look like this as an **SMB URL**:

`smb://workgroup;user:password@server/share/folder/file.txt`

The *JCifsMonitor* can **not** test:

• file contains specific content
• a specific number of files in a folder, for example folder should contain exactly / more or less than x files
• Age or modification time stamps of files or folders
• Permissions or other attributes of files or folders

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JCifsMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 29. Monitor specific parameters for the JCifsMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>retry</code></td>
<td>Number of retries before the service is marked as <em>down</em>.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>timeout</code></td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the SMB service.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain</td>
<td>Windows domain where the user is located. You don't have to use the domain parameter if you use local user accounts.</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Username to access the resource over a network</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for the user</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>Path to the resource you want to test</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>The test mode which has the following options:</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>path_exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>path_exist: Service is up if the resource is accessible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>path_not_exist: Service is up if the resource is not accessible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>folder_empty: Service is up if the folder is empty (0 files)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>folder_not_empty: Service is up if the folder has at least one file</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smbHost</td>
<td>Override the IP address of the SMB url to check shares on different file servers.</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folderIgnoreFiles</td>
<td>Ignore specific files in folder with regular expression. This parameter will just be applied on folder_empty and folder_not_empty, otherwise it will be ignored.</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It makes little sense to have retries higher than 1. It is a waste of resources during the monitoring.

Please consider, if you are accessing shares with Mac OSX you have some side effects with the hidden file '.DS_Store.' It could give you false positives in monitoring, you can use then the folderIgnoreFiles parameter.

**Example test existence of a file**

This example shows how to configure the *JCifsMonitor* to test if a file share is available over a network. For this example we have access to a share for error logs and we want to get an outage if we have any error log files in our folder. The share is named *log*. The service should go back to normal if the error log file is deleted and the folder is empty.
JCifsMonitor configuration to test that a shared folder is empty

```xml
<service name="CIFS-ErrorLog" interval="30000" user-defined="true" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="1" />
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
  <parameter key="domain" value="contoso" /> ①
  <parameter key="username" value="MonitoringUser" /> ②
  <parameter key="password" value="MonitoringPassword" /> ③
  <parameter key="path" value="/fileshare/log/" /> ④
  <parameter key="mode" value="folder_empty" /> ⑤
</service>

<monitor service="CIFS-ErrorLog" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JCifsMonitor" />

① Name of the SMB or Microsoft Windows Domain
② User for accessing the share
③ Password for accessing the share
④ Path to the folder inside of the share as part of the SMB URL
⑤ Mode is set to `folder_empty`

3.6.19. JDBCMonitor

The JDBCMonitor checks that it is able to connect to a database and checks if it is able to get the database catalog from that database management system (DBMS). It is based on the JDBC technology to connect and communicate with the database.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JDBCMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 30. Monitor specific parameters for the JDBCMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>driver</td>
<td>JDBC driver class to use</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>com.sybase.jdbc2.jdbc.SybDriver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>JDBC Url to connect to.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>jdbc:sysbase:Tds:OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME/tempdb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>Database user</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Database password</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in ms for the database connection</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retries</td>
<td>How many retries should be performed before failing the test</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME` is replaced in the `url` parameter with the IP or resolved hostname of the interface the monitored service is assigned to.

### Provide the database driver

The `JDBCMonitor` is based on `JDBC` and requires a JDBC driver to communicate with any database. Due to the fact that OpenNMS Horizon itself uses a PostgreSQL database, the PostgreSQL JDBC driver is available out of the box. For all other database systems a compatible JDBC driver has to be provided to OpenNMS Horizon as a jar-file. To provide a JDBC driver place the `driver-jar` in the `opennms/lib` folder of your OpenNMS Horizon. To use the `JDBCMonitor` from a remote poller, the `driver-jar` has to be provided to the `Remote Poller` too. This may be tricky or impossible when using the Java Webstart Remote Poller, because of code signing requirements.

### Examples

The following example checks if the PostgreSQL database used by OpenNMS Horizon is available.

```xml
<service name="OpenNMS-DBMS" interval="30000" user-defined="true" status="on">
  <parameter key="driver" value="org.postgresql.Driver"/>
  <parameter key="url" value="jdbc:postgresql://OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME:5432/opennms"/>
  <parameter key="user" value="opennms"/>
  <parameter key="password" value="opennms"/>
</service>
<monitor service="OpenNMS-DBMS" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JDBCMonitor"/>
```

### 3.6.20. JDBCStoredProcedureMonitor

The `JDBCStoredProcedureMonitor` checks the result of a stored procedure in a remote database. The result of the stored procedure has to be a boolean value (representing true or false). The service associated with this monitor is marked as up if the stored procedure returns true and it is marked as down in all other cases. It is based on the `JDBC` technology to connect and communicate with the database.
Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JDBCStoredProcedureMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 31. Monitor specific parameters for the JDBCStoredProcedureMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>driver</td>
<td>JDBC driver class to use</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>com.sybase.jdbc2.jdbc.SybDriver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>JDBC Url to connect to.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>jdbc:sysbase:Tds:OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME/tempdb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>Database user</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Database password</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in ms for the database connection</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retries</td>
<td>How many retries should be performed before failing the test</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stored-procedure</td>
<td>Name of the database stored procedure to call</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schema</td>
<td>Name of the database schema in which the stored procedure is</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME is replaced in the url parameter with the IP or resolved hostname of the interface the monitored service is assigned to.

Provide the database driver

The JDBCStoredProcedureMonitor is based on JDBC and requires a JDBC driver to communicate with any database. Due to the fact that OpenNMS Horizon itself uses a PostgreSQL database, the PostgreSQL JDBC driver is available out of the box. For all other database systems a compatible JDBC driver has to be provided to OpenNMS Horizon as a jar-file. To provide a JDBC driver place the driver-jar in the opennms/lib folder of your OpenNMS Horizon. To use the JDBCStoredProcedureMonitor from a remote poller, the driver-jar has to be provided to the Remote Poller too. This may be tricky or impossible when using the Java Webstart Remote Poller, because of code signing requirements.

Examples

The following example checks a stored procedure added to the PostgreSQL database used by
OpenNMS Horizon. The stored procedure returns true as long as less than 250000 events are in the events table of OpenNMS Horizon.

**Stored procedure which is used in the monitor**

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION eventlimit_sp() RETURNS boolean AS
$BODY$
DECLARE
    num_events integer;
BEGIN
    SELECT COUNT(*) into num_events from events;
    RETURN num_events > 250000;
END;$BODY$
LANGUAGE plpgsql VOLATILE NOT LEAKPROOF
COST 100;

```

3.6.21. **JDBCQueryMonitor**

The **JDBCQueryMonitor** runs an SQL query against a database and is able to verify the result of the query. A read-only connection is used to run the SQL query, so the data in the database is not altered. It is based on the **JDBC** technology to connect and communicate with the database.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JDBCQueryMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 32. Monitor specific parameters for the JDBCQueryMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>driver</td>
<td>JDBC driver class to use</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>com.sybase.jdbc2.jdbc.SybDriver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>JDBC URL to connect to.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>jdbc:sybase:Tds:OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME/tempdb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>Database user</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Database password</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>The SQL query to run</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action</td>
<td>What evaluation action to perform</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>row_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column</td>
<td>The result column to evaluate against</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operator</td>
<td>Operator to use for the evaluation</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>&gt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operand</td>
<td>The operand to compare against the SQL query result</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>depends on the action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>message</td>
<td>The message to use if the service is down. Both operands and the operator are added to the message too.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>generic message depending on the action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in ms for the database connection</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retries</td>
<td>How many retries should be performed before failing the test</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME is replaced in the url parameter with the IP or resolved hostname of the interface the monitored service is assigned to.

**Table 33. Available action parameters and their default operand**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default operand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>row_count</td>
<td>The number of returned rows is compared, not a value of the resulting rows</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compare_string</td>
<td>Strings are always checked for equality with the operand</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compare_int</td>
<td>An integer from a column of the first result row is compared</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 34. Available operand parameters**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>XML entity to use in XML configs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!=</td>
<td>!=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>&lt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>&gt;=</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Evaluating the action - operator - operand**

Only the first result row returned by the SQL query is evaluated. The evaluation can be against the value of one column or the number of rows returned by the SQL query.

**Provide the database driver**

The *JDBCQueryMonitor* is based on *JDBC* and requires a JDBC driver to communicate with any database. Due to the fact that OpenNMS Horizon itself uses a PostgreSQL database, the PostgreSQL JDBC driver is available out of the box. For all other database systems a compatible JDBC driver has to be provided to OpenNMS Horizon as a *jar-file*. To provide a JDBC driver place the *driver-jar* in the *opennms/lib* folder of your OpenNMS Horizon. To use the *JDBCQueryMonitor* from a remote poller, the *driver-jar* has to be provided to the *Remote Poller* too. This may be tricky or impossible when using the *Java Webstart Remote Poller*, because of code signing requirements.

**Examples**

The following example checks if the number of events in the OpenNMS Horizon database is fewer than 250000.

```xml
<service name="OpenNMS-DB-Event-Limit" interval="30000" user-defined="true" status="on">
  <parameter key="driver" value="org.postgresql.Driver"/>
  <parameter key="url" value="jdbc:postgresql://OPENNMS_JDBC_HOSTNAME:5432/opennms"/>
  <parameter key="user" value="opennms"/>
  <parameter key="password" value="opennms"/>
  <parameter key="query" value="select eventid from events" />
  <parameter key="action" value="row_count" />
  <parameter key="operand" value="250000" />
  <parameter key="operator" value="&lt;" />
  <parameter key="message" value="too many events in OpenNMS database" />
</service>

<monitor service="OpenNMS-DB-Event-Limit" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JDBCQueryMonitor" />
```
3.6.22. JolokiaBeanMonitor

The JolokiaBeanMonitor is a JMX monitor specialized for the use with the Jolokia framework. If it is required to execute a method via JMX or poll an attribute via JMX, the JolokiaBeanMonitor can be used. It requires a fully installed and configured Jolokia agent to be deployed in the JVM container. If required it allows attribute names, paths, and method parameters to be provided additional arguments to the call. To determine the status of the service the JolokiaBeanMonitor relies on the output to be matched against a banner. If the banner is part of the output the status is interpreted as up. If the banner is not available in the output the status is determined as down. Banner matching supports regular expression and substring match.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.JolokiaBeanMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 35. Monitor specific parameters for the JolokiaBeanMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beannam</td>
<td>The bean name to query against.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attrnam</td>
<td>The name of the JMX attribute to scrape.</td>
<td>optional (attrname or methodname must be set)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attrpath</td>
<td>The attribute path.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auth-usernam</td>
<td>The username to use for HTTP BASIC auth.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auth-passwor</td>
<td>The password to use for HTTP BASIC auth.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banner</td>
<td>A string that is match against the output of the system-call. If the output contains the banner, the service is determined as up. Specify a regex by starting with ~.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>input1</td>
<td>Method input</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>input2</td>
<td>Method input</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methodname</td>
<td>The name of the bean method to execute, output will be compared to banner.</td>
<td>optional (attrname or methodname must be set)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The port of the jolokia agent.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>8080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>The jolokia agent url. Defaults to &quot;http://&lt;ipaddr&gt;:&lt;port&gt;/jolokia&quot;</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 36. Variables which can be used in the configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${ipaddr}</td>
<td>IP-address of the interface the service is bound to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${port}</td>
<td>Port the service it bound to.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

Some example configuration how to configure the monitor in the poller-configuration.xml

```xml
<parameter key="url" value="http://${ipaddr}:${port}/jolokia"/>
<parameter key="url" value="https://${ipaddr}:${port}/jolokia"/>
```

AttrName vs MethodName

The JolokiaBeanMonitor has two modes of operation. It can either scrape an attribute from a bean, or execute a method and compare output to a banner. The method execute is useful when your application has it's own test methods that you would like to trigger via OpenNMS Horizon.

The args to execute a test method called "superTest" that take in a string as input would look like this:

```xml
<parameter key="beannme" value="MyBean" />
<parameter key="methodname" value="superTest" />
<parameter key="input1" value="someString"/>
```

The args to scrape an attribute from the same bean would look like this:

```xml
<parameter key="beannme" value="MyBean" />
<parameter key="attrname" value="upTime" />
```

3.6.23. LdapMonitor

The LDAP monitor tests for LDAP service availability. The LDAP monitor first tries to establish a TCP connection on the specified port. Then, if it succeeds, it will attempt to establish an LDAP connection and do a simple search. If the search returns a result within the specified timeout and attempts, the service will be considered available. The scope of the LDAP search is limited to the immediate subordinates of the base object. The LDAP search is anonymous by default. The LDAP monitor makes use of the com.novell.ldap.LDAPConnection class.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.LdapMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuration and Usage

### Table 37. Monitor specific parameters for the LdapMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dn</td>
<td>The distinguished name to use if authenticated search is needed.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>The password to use if authenticated search is needed.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The destination port where connection shall be attempted.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a search result.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>searchbase</td>
<td>The base distinguished name to search from.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>searchfilter</td>
<td>The LDAP search’s filter.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>(objectclass=*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for a result from the search.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>The version of the LDAP protocol to use, specified as an integer. Note: Only LDAPv3 is supported at the moment.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

```xml
<--! OpenNMS.org -->
<service name="LDAP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="port" value="389"/>
  <parameter key="version" value="3"/>
  <parameter key="searchbase" value="dc=opennms,dc=org"/>
  <parameter key="searchfilter" value="uid=ulf"/>
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="ldap"/>
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="ldap"/>
</service>

<monitor service="LDAP" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.LdapMonitor"/>
```

### 3.6.24. LdapsMonitor

The LDAPS monitor tests the response of an SSL-enabled LDAP server. The LDAPS monitor is an SSL-enabled extension of the LDAP monitor with a default TCP port value of 636. All LdapMonitor parameters apply, so please refer to [LdapMonitor's documentation](#) for more information.
Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The destination port where connections shall be attempted.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>636</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remote Enabled true

Configuration and Usage

Table 38. Monitor specific parameters for the LdapsMonitor

Examples

```xml
<!-- LDAPS service at OpenNMS.org is on port 6636 -->
<service name="LDAPS" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="port" value="6636"/>
  <parameter key="version" value="3"/>
  <parameter key="searchbase" value="dc=opennms,dc=org"/>
  <parameter key="searchfilter" value="uid=ulf"/>
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="ldap"/>
</service>

<monitor service="LDAPS" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.LdapsMonitor"/>
```

3.6.25. MemcachedMonitor

This monitor allows to monitor Memcached, a distributed memory object caching system. To monitor the service availability the monitor tests if the Memcached statistics can be requested. The statistics are processed and stored in RRD files. The following metrics are collected:

Table 39. Collected metrics using the MemcachedMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uptime</td>
<td>Seconds the Memcached server has been running since last restart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rusageuser</td>
<td>User time seconds for the server process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rusagesystem</td>
<td>System time seconds for the server process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curritems</td>
<td>Number of items in this servers cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>totalitems</td>
<td>Number of items stored on this server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metric</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytes</td>
<td>Number of bytes currently used for caching items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limitmaxbytes</td>
<td>Maximum configured cache size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currconnections</td>
<td>Number of open connections to this Memcached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>totalconnections</td>
<td>Number of successful connect attempts to this server since start.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectionstructure</td>
<td>Number of internal connection handles currently held by the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmdget</td>
<td>Number of GET commands received since server startup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmdset</td>
<td>Number of SET commands received since server startup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gethits</td>
<td>Number of successful GET commands (cache hits) since startup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getmisses</td>
<td>Number of failed GET requests, because nothing was cached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evictions</td>
<td>Number of objects removed from the cache to free up memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytesread</td>
<td>Number of bytes received from the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byteswritten</td>
<td>Number of bytes send to the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threads</td>
<td>Number of threads used by this server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.MemcachedMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 40. Monitor specific parameters for the MemcachedMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for Memcached connection establishment.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to establish the Memcached connection.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>TCP port connecting to Memcached.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>11211</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows a configuration in the poller-configuration.xml.

This monitor is designed for Citrix® NetScaler® loadbalancing checks. It checks if more than x percent of the servers assigned to a specific group on a loadbalanced service are active. The required data is gathered via SNMP from the NetScaler®. The status of the servers is determined by the NetScaler®. The provided service itself is not part of the check. The basis of this monitor is the SnmpMonitorStrategy. A valid SNMP configuration in OpenNMS Horizon for the NetScaler® is required.

A NetScaler® can manage several groups of servers per application. This monitor just covers one group at a time. If there are multiple groups to check, define one monitor per group.

This monitor is not checking the loadbalanced service itself.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.NetScalerGroupHealthMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 41. Monitor specific parameters for the NetScalerGroupHealthMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group-name</td>
<td>The name of the server group to check</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group-health</td>
<td>The percentage of active servers vs total server of the group as an integer</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example checks a server group called central_webfront_http. If at least 70% of the
servers are active, the service is up. If less than 70% of the servers are active the service is down. A configuration like the following can be used for the example in the poller-configuration.xml.

```xml
<service name="NetScaler_Health" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="group-name" value="central_webfront_http" />
  <parameter key="group-health" value="70" />
</service>
<monitor service="NetScaler_Health" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.NetScalerGroupHealthMonitor" />
```

Details about the used SNMP checks

The monitor checks the status of the server group based on the NS-ROOT-MIB using the svcGrpMemberState. svcGrpMemberState is part of the serviceGroupMemberTable. The serviceGroupMemberTable is indexed by svcGrpMemberGroupName and svcGrpMemberName. A initial lookup for the group-name is performed. Based on the lookup the serviceGroupMemberTable is walked with the numeric representation of the server group. The monitor interprets just the server status code 7-up as active server. Other status codes like 2-unknown or 3-busy are counted for total amount of servers.

### 3.6.27. NrpeMonitor

This monitor allows to test plugins and checks running on the Nagios Remote Plugin Executor (NRPE) framework. The monitor allows to test the status output of any available check command executed by NRPE. Between OpenNMS Horizon and Nagios are some conceptional differences. In OpenNMS Horizon a service can only be available or not available and the response time for the service is measured. Nagios on the other hand combines service availability, performance data collection and thresholding in one check command. For this reason a Nagios check command can have more states then OK and CRITICAL. Using the NrpeMonitor marks all check command results other than OK as down. The full output of the check command output message is passed into the service down event in OpenNMS Horizon.

- **Warning**: NRPE configuration on the server is required and the check command has to be configured, e.g. command[check_apt]=/usr/lib/nagios/plugins/check_apt
- **Tip**: OpenNMS Horizon executes every NRPE check in a Java thread without fork() a process and it is more resource friendly. Nevertheless it is possible to run NRPE plugins which combine a lot of external programs like sed, awk or cut. Be aware, each command end up in forking additional processes.

#### Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.NrpeMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration and Usage

Table 42. Monitor specific parameters for the NrpeMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries before the service is marked as down.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the NRPE executing a check command.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>The {check_name} of the command configured as `command[{check_name}]=&quot;/path/to/plugin/check-script&quot;</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>Port to access NRPE on the remote server.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>5666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>padding</td>
<td>Padding for sending the command to the NRPE agent.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usessl</td>
<td>Enable encryption of network communication. NRPE uses SSL with anonymous DH and the following cipher suite <code>TLS_DH_anon_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA</code></td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Using check_apt with NRPE

This example shows how to configure the NrpeMonitor running the check_apt command on a configured NRPE.

Configuration of the NRPE check command on the agent in 'nrpe.cfg'

```
command[check_apt]=/usr/lib/nagios/plugins/check_apt
```

Configuration to test the NRPE plugin with the NrpeMonitor

```
<service name="NRPE-Check-APT" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="3" />
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
  <parameter key="port" value="5666" />
  <parameter key="command" value="check_apt" />
  <parameter key="padding" value="2" />
</service>

<monitor service="NRPE-Check-APT" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.NrpeMonitor" />
```

3.6.28. NtpMonitor

The NTP monitor tests for NTP service availability. During the poll an NTP request query packet is generated. If a response is received, it is parsed and validated. If the response is a valid NTP response, the service is considered available.
Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.NtpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

**Table 43. Monitor specific parameters for the NtpMonitor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The destination port where the NTP request shall be sent.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for a response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

```
<--! Fast NTP server -->
<service name="NTP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="1000"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="ntp"/>
    <parameter key="ds-name" value="ntp"/>
</service>
<monitor service="NTP" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.NtpMonitor"/>
```

### 3.6.29. OmsaStorageMonitor

With OmsaStorageMonitor you are able to monitor your Dell OpenManaged servers RAID array status. The following OIDS from the STORAGEMANAGEMENT-MIB are supported by this monitor:

```
virtualDiskRollUpStatus .1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10893.1.20.140.1.1.19
arrayDiskLogicalConnectionVirtualDiskNumber .1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10893.1.20.140.3.1.5
arrayDiskNexusID .1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10893.1.20.130.4.1.26
arrayDiskLogicalConnectionArrayDiskNumber .1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10893.1.20.140.3.1.3
arrayDiskState .1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10893.1.20.130.4.1.4
```

To test the status of the disk array the `virtualDiskRollUpStatus` is used. If the result of the `virtualDiskRollUpStatus` is not 3 the monitors is marked as **down**.

**Table 44. Possible result of virtual disk rollup status**
You'll need to know the maximum number of possible logical disks you have in your environment. For example: If you have 3 RAID arrays, you need for each logical disk array a service poller.

To give more detailed information in case of an disk array error, the monitor tries to identify the problem using the other OIDs. This values are used to enrich the error reason in the service down event. The disk array state is resolved to a human readable value by the following status table.

### Table 45. Possible array disk state errors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Online</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Offline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Degraded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Recovering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Resynching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Rebuilding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>noMedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Formating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Running Diagnostics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Initializing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monitor facts

| Class Name | org.opennms.netmgmt.poller.monitors.OmsaStorageMonitor |
Configuration and Usage

Monitor specific parameters for the OmsaStorageMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>virtualDiskNumber</td>
<td>The disk index of your RAID array</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Amount of attempts opening a connection and try to get the greeting banner before the service goes down.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait before receiving the SNMP response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The TCP port OpenManage is listening</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

Some example configuration how to configure the monitor in the poller-configuration.xml.

The RAID array monitor for your first array is configured with virtualDiskNumber = 1 and can look like this:

```xml
<service name="OMSA-Disk-Array-1" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="3"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="6000"/>
    <parameter key="virtualDiskNumber" value="1"/>
</service>

<monitor service="OMSA-Disk-Array-1" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.OmsaStorageMonitor"/>
```

If there is more than one RAID array to monitor you need an additional configuration. In this case virtualDiskNumber = 2. And so on...

```xml
<service name="OMSA-Disk-Array-2" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="3"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="6000"/>
    <parameter key="virtualDiskNumber" value="2"/>
</service>

<monitor service="OMSA-Disk-Array-2" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.OmsaStorageMonitor"/>
```
3.6.30. OpenManageChassisMonitor

The OpenManageChassis monitor tests the status of a Dell chassis by querying its SNMP agent. The monitor polls the value of the node’s SNMP OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10892.1.300.10.1.4.1 (MIB-Dell-10892::chassisStatus). If the value is OK (3), the service is considered available.

As this monitor uses SNMP, the queried nodes must have proper SNMP configuration in `snmp-config.xml`.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.OpenManageChassisMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

**Table 46. Monitor specific parameters for the OpenManageChassisMonitor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The port to which connection shall be tried.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from <code>snmp-config.xml</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of polls to attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from <code>snmp-config.xml</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time (in milliseconds) to wait before receiving the SNMP response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from <code>snmp-config.xml</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

```xml
<!-- Overriding default SNMP config -->
<service name="OMA-Chassis" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="3"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="5000"/>
</service>

<monitor service="OMA-Chassis" class-name= "org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.OpenManageChassisMonitor"/>
```

Dell MIBs

Dell MIBs can be found [here](#). Download the DCMIB<version>.zip or DCMIB<version>.exe file corresponding to the version of your OpenManage agents. The latest one should be good enough for all previous version though.

3.6.31. PercMonitor

This monitor tests the status of a PERC RAID array.
The monitor first polls the RAID-Adapter-MIB::logicaldriveTable (1.3.6.1.4.1.3582.1.1.2) to retrieve the status of the RAID array you want to monitor. If the value of the status object of the corresponding logicaldriveEntry is not 2, the array is degraded and the monitor further polls the RAID-Adapter-MIB::physicaldriveTable (1.3.6.1.4.1.3582.1.1.3) to detect the failed drive(s).

![This monitor requires the outdated persnmpd software to be installed on the polled nodes. Please prefer using OmsaStorageMonitor monitor where possible.]

### Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.PercMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false (relies on SNMP configuration)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration and Usage

**Table 47. Monitor specific parameters for the PercMonitor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>array</td>
<td>The RAID array you want to monitor.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>The UDP port to connect to</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>The number of attempts the monitor shall try getting a response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>The amount of time in milliseconds the monitor shall wait for a response during each polling attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

```xml
<!-- Monitor 1st RAID arrays using configuration from snmp-config.xml -->
<service name="PERC" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on" />

<monitor service="PERC" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.PercMonitor" />
```

### 3.6.32. Pop3Monitor

The POP3 monitor tests for POP3 service availability on a node. The monitor first tries to establish a TCP connection on the specified port. If a connection is established, a service banner should have been received. The monitor makes sure the service banner is a valid POP3 banner (ie: starts with "+OK"). If the banner is valid, the monitor sends a `QUIT POP3` command and makes sure the service answers with a valid response (ie: a response that starts with "+OK"). The service is considered available if the service's answer to the `QUIT` command is valid.

The behaviour can be simulated with `telnet`: 
$ telnet mail.opennms.org 110
Trying 192.168.0.100
Connected to mail.opennms.org.
Escape character is '^]'.
+OK <21860.1076718099@mail.opennms.org>
quistrate
+OK
Connection closed by foreign host.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.Pop3Monitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

**Table 48. Monitor specific parameters for the Pop3Monitor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>TCP port to connect to.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to find the service available.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strict-timeout</td>
<td>Boolean If set to true, makes sure that at least timeout milliseconds are elapsed between attempts.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for the underlying socket's connect and read operations.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

```xml
<service name="POP3" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="retry" value="2"/>
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="pop3"/>
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="pop3"/>
</service>

<monitor service="POP3" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.Pop3Monitor"/>
```

3.6.33. PrTableMonitor

The PrTableMonitor monitor tests the prTable of a net-snmp SNMP agent.
A table containing information on running programs/daemons configured for monitoring in the snmpd.conf file of the agent. Processes violating the number of running processes required by the agent’s configuration file are flagged with numerical and textual errors.

— UCD-SNMP-MIB

The monitor looks up the `prErrorFlag` entries of this table. If the value of a `prErrorFlag` entry in this table is set to "1" the service is considered unavailable.

A Error flag to indicate trouble with a process. It goes to 1 if there is an error, 0 if no error.

— UCD-SNMP-MIB

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.PrTableMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

*Table 49. Monitor specific parameters for the PrTableMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>port</code></td>
<td>The port to which connection shall be tried.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>retry</code></td>
<td>Number of polls to attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>retries</code></td>
<td><strong>Deprecated.</strong> Same as <code>retry</code>. Parameter <code>retry</code> takes precedence if both are set.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>timeout</code></td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait before receiving the SNMP response.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
UCD-SNMP-MIB

The UCD-SNMP-MIB may be found here.

3.6.34. RadiusAuthMonitor

This monitor allows to test the functionality of the RADIUS authentication system. The availability is tested by sending an AUTH packet to the RADIUS server. If a valid ACCEPT response is received, the RADIUS service is up and considered as available.

To use this monitor it is required to install the RADIUS protocol for OpenNMS Horizon.

{apt-get,yum} install {opennms-package-base-name}-plugin-protocol-radius

The test is similar to test the behavior of a RADIUS server by evaluating the result with the command line tool radtest.

```
root@vagrant:~# radtest "John Doe" hello 127.0.0.1 1812 radiuspassword
Sending Access-Request of id 49 to 127.0.0.1 port 1812
 User-Name = "John Doe"
 User-Password = "hello"
 NAS-IP-Address = 127.0.0.1
 NAS-Port = 1812
 Message-Authenticator = 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
 rad_recv: Access-Accept packet from host 127.0.0.1 port 1812, id=49, length=37 ①
   Reply-Message = "Hello, John Doe"
```

① The Access-Accept message which is evaluated by the monitor.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.protocols.radius.monitor.RadiusAuthMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 50. Monitor specific parameters for the RadiusAuthMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the RADIUS service.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>This is a placeholder for the second optional monitor parameter description.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authport</td>
<td>RADIUS authentication port.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>1812</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acctport</td>
<td>RADIUS accounting port.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>1813</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>Username to test the authentication</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>OpenNMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password to test the authentication</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>OpenNMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secret</td>
<td>The RADIUS shared secret used for communication between the client/NAS and the RADIUS server.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>secret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authtype</td>
<td>RADIUS authentication type. The following authentication types are supported:</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>pap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chap, pap, mschapv1, mschapv2, eapmd5, eapmschapv2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasid</td>
<td>The Network Access Server identifier originating the Access-Request.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>opennms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

Example configuration how to configure the monitor in the `poller-configuration.xml`.

```xml
<service name="Radius-Authentication" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="3" />
    <parameter key="timeout" value="3000" />
    <parameter key="user" value="John Doe" />
    <parameter key="password" value="hello" />
    <parameter key="secret" value="radiuspassword" />
    <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/var/lib/opennms/rrd/response" />
    <parameter key="ds-name" value="radiusauth" />
</service>

<monitor service="Radius-Authentication" class-name="org.opennms.protocols.radius.monitor.RadiusAuthMonitor" />
```
3.6.35. SmbMonitor

This monitor is used to test the *NetBIOS over TCP/IP* name resolution in Microsoft Windows environments. The monitor tries to retrieve a *NetBIOS name* for the IP address of the interface. Name services for *NetBIOS* in Microsoft Windows are provided on port 137/UDP or 137/TCP.

The service uses the IP address of the interface, where the monitor is assigned to. The service is *up* if for the given IP address a *NetBIOS name* is registered and can be resolved.

For troubleshooting see the usage of the Microsoft Windows command line tool *nbtstat* or on Linux *nmblookup*.

Microsoft deprecated the usage of *NetBIOS*. Since Windows Server 2000 DNS is used as the default name resolution.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SmbMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

*Table 51. Monitor specific parameters for the SmbMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get a valid response</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for TCP connection establishment</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do-node-status</td>
<td>Try to get the NetBIOS node status type for the given address</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

Some example configuration how to configure the monitor in the *poller-configuration.xml*.

```xml
<service name="SMB" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="1"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
</service>
<monitor service="SMB" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SmbMonitor"/>
```

3.6.36. SnmpMonitor

The SNMP monitor gives a generic possibility to monitor states and results from SNMP agents. This monitor has two basic operation modes:
• Test the response value of one specific OID (scalar object identifier);
• Test multiple values in a whole table.

To decide which mode should be used, the walk and match-all parameters are used.

See the Operating mode selection'' and Monitor specific parameters for the SnmpMonitor” tables below for more information about these operation modes.

Table 52. Operating mode selection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>walk</th>
<th>match-all</th>
<th>Operating mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>tabular, all values must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
<td>tabular, any value must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td></td>
<td>specifies that the value of at least minimum and at most maximum objects encountered in tabular, between minimum and maximum values must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>scalar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
<td>scalar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td></td>
<td>tabular, between minimum and maximum values must match</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This monitor can't be used on the OpenNMS Horizon Remote Poller. It is currently not possible for the Remote Poller to have access to the SNMP configuration of a central OpenNMS Horizon.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SnmpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 53. Monitor specific parameters for the SnmpMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| hex       | Specifies that the value monitored should be compared against its hexadecimal representation. Use
<p>| optional  | false                                                                        |          |               |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **match-all** | Can be set to:  
**count**: specifies that the value of at least minimum and at most maximum objects encountered in the walk must match the criteria specified by operand and operator. **true** and **walk** is set to **true**: specifies that the value of every object encountered in the walk must match the criteria specified by the operand and operator parameters. **false** and **walk** is set to **true**: specifies that the value of any object encountered in the walk must match the criteria specified by the operand and operator parameters. | optional | **true** |
<p>| <strong>maximum</strong> | Valid only when <strong>match-all</strong> is set to <strong>count</strong>, otherwise ignored. Should be used in conjunction with the <strong>minimum</strong> parameter. Specifies that the value of at most maximum objects encountered in the walk must meet the criteria specified by the operand and operator parameters. | optional | 0 |
| <strong>minimum</strong> | Valid only when <strong>match-all</strong> is set to <strong>count</strong>, otherwise ignored. Should be used in conjunction with the <strong>maximum</strong> parameter. Specifies that the value of at least minimum objects encountered in the walk must meet the criteria specified by the operand and operator parameters. | optional | 0 |
| <strong>oid</strong> | The object identifier of the <strong>MIB</strong> object to monitor. If no other parameters are present, the monitor asserts that the agent's response for this object must include a valid value (as opposed to an error, no-such-name, or end-of-view condition) that is non-null. | optional | <code>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.2.0</code> (SNMPv2-MIB::SysObjectID) |
| <strong>operand</strong> | The value to be compared against the observed value of the monitored object. Note: Comparison will always succeed if either the <strong>operand</strong> or <strong>operator</strong> parameter isn't set and the monitored value is non-null. | optional | - |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>operator</td>
<td>The operator to be used for comparing the monitored object against the operand parameter. Must be one of the following symbolic operators: &lt; (&lt;): Less than. Both operand and observed object value must be numeric. &gt; (&gt;): Greater than. Both operand and observed object value must be numeric. &lt;= (&lt;=): Less than or equal to. Both operand and observed object value must be numeric. &gt;= (&gt;=): Greater than or equal to. Both operand and observed object value must be numeric. =: Equal to. Applied in numeric context if both operand and observed object value are numeric, otherwise in string context as a case-sensitive exact match. !=: Not equal to. Applied in numeric context if both operand and observed object value are numeric, otherwise in string context as a case-sensitive exact match. ~: Regular expression match. Always applied in string context. Note: Comparison will always succeed if either the operand or operator parameter isn’t set and the monitored value is non-null. Keep in mind that you need to escape all &lt; and &gt; characters as XML entities (&lt; and &gt; respectively)</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>Destination port where the SNMP requests shall be sent.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason-template</td>
<td>A user-provided template used for the monitor’s reason code if the service is unavailable. Defaults to a reasonable value if unset. See below for an explanation of the possible template parameters.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>depends on operation mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of polls to attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retries</td>
<td><strong>Deprecated</strong> Same as retry. Parameter retry takes precedence if both are set.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for retrieving the object’s value.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>from snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>false: Sets the monitor to poll for a scalar object unless if the match-all parameter is set to count, in which case the match-all parameter takes precedence. true: Sets the monitor to poll for a tabular object where the match-all parameter defines how the tabular object’s values must match the criteria defined by the operator and operand parameters. See also the match-all, minimum, and maximum parameters.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 54. Variables which can be used in the reason-template parameter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${hex}</td>
<td>Value of the hex parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${ipaddr}</td>
<td>IP address polled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${matchAll}</td>
<td>Value of the match-all parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${matchCount}</td>
<td>When match-all is set to count, contains the number of matching instances encountered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${maximum}</td>
<td>Value of the maximum parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${minimum}</td>
<td>Value of the minimum parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${observedValue}</td>
<td>Polled value that made the monitor succeed or fail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${oid}</td>
<td>Value of the oid parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${operand}</td>
<td>Value of the operand parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${operator}</td>
<td>Value of the operator parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${port}</td>
<td>Value of the port parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${retry}</td>
<td>Value of the retry parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${timeout}</td>
<td>Value of the timeout parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${walk}</td>
<td>Value of the walk parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example for monitoring scalar object

As a working example we want to monitor the thermal system fan status which is provided as a scalar object ID.

```plaintext
cpqHeThermalSystemFanStatus .1.3.6.1.4.1.232.6.2.6.4.0
```

The manufacturer MIB gives the following information:
Description of the cpqHeThermalSystemFanStatus from CPQHLTH-MIB

SYNTAX INTEGER {
   other    (1),
   ok       (2),
   degraded (3),
   failed   (4)
}
ACCESS    read-only
DESCRIPTION
"The status of the fan(s) in the system.

This value will be one of the following:
other(1)  
Fan status detection is not supported by this system or driver.

ok(2)    
All fans are operating properly.

degraded(3)    
A non-required fan is not operating properly.

failed(4)    
A required fan is not operating properly.

If the cpqHeThermalDegradedAction is set to shutdown(3) the
system will be shutdown if the failed(4) condition occurs."

The SnmpMonitor is configured to test if the fan status returns ok(2). If so, the service is marked as up. Any other value indicates a problem with the thermal fan status and marks the service down.

Example SnmpMonitor as HP InsightManager fan monitor in poller-configuration.xml

<service name="HP-Insight-Fan-System" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
   <parameter key="oid" value=".1.3.6.1.4.1.232.6.2.6.4.0"/> ①
   <parameter key="operator" value=""/>  ②
   <parameter key="operand" value="2"/>  ③
   <parameter key="reason-template" value="System fan status is not ok. The state should be ok({operand}) the observed value is ${observedValue}. Please check your HP Insight Manager. Syntax: other(1), ok(2), degraded(3), failed(4)"/> ④
</service>

<monitor service="HP-Insight-Fan-System" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SnmpMonitor"/>

① Scalar object ID to test
② Operator for testing the response value
③ Integer 2 as operand for the test
Encode MIB status in the reason code to give more detailed information if the service goes down

Example test SNMP table with all matching values

The second mode shows how to monitor values of a whole SNMP table. As a practical use case the status of a set of physical drives is monitored. This example configuration shows the status monitoring from the CPQIDA-MIB.

We use as a scalar object id the physical drive status given by the following tabular OID:

```
cpqDaPhyDrvStatus .1.3.6.1.4.1.232.3.2.5.1.1.6
```

Description of the cpqDaPhyDrvStatus object id from CPQIDA-MIB

```text
SYNTAX  INTEGER  {
          other             (1),
          ok                (2),
          failed            (3),
          predictiveFailure (4)
    }
ACCESS  read-only
DESCRIPTION
Physical Drive Status.
This shows the status of the physical drive.
The following values are valid for the physical drive status:

other (1)
Indicates that the instrument agent does not recognize
the drive. You may need to upgrade your instrument agent
and/or driver software.

ok (2)
Indicates the drive is functioning properly.

failed (3)
Indicates that the drive is no longer operating and
should be replaced.

predictiveFailure(4)
Indicates that the drive has a predictive failure error and
should be replaced.
```

The configuration in our monitor will test all physical drives for status ok(2).
Example SnmpMonitor as HP Insight physical drive monitor in poller-configuration.xml

```
<service name="HP-Insight-Drive-Physical" interval="300000" user-defined="false"
status="on">
  <parameter key="oid" value=".1.3.6.1.4.1.232.3.2.5.1.1.6"/>
  <parameter key="walk" value="true"/> ②
  <parameter key="operator" value="="/>
  <parameter key="operand" value="2"/> ④
  <parameter key="match-all" value="true"/> ⑤
  <parameter key="reason-template" value="One or more physical drives are not ok. The state should be ok(${operand}) the observed value is ${observedValue}. Please check your HP Insight Manager. Syntax: other(1), ok(2), failed(3), predictiveFailure(4), erasing(5), eraseDone(6), eraseQueued(7)"/>
</service>

<monitor service="HP-Insight-Drive-Physical" class-name= "org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SnmpMonitor" />
```

① OID for SNMP table with all physical drive states
② Enable walk mode to test every entry in the table against the test criteria
③ Test operator for integer
④ Integer 2 as operand for the test
⑤ Test in walk mode has to be passed for every entry in the table
⑥ Encode MIB status in the reason code to give more detailed information if the service goes down

Example test SNMP table with all matching values

This example shows how to use the SnmpMonitor to test if the number of static routes are within a given boundary. The service is marked as up if at least 3 and at maximum 10 static routes are set on a network device. This status can be monitored by polling the table ipRouteProto from the RFC1213-MIB2.

```
ipRouteProto 1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.9
```

The MIB description gives us the following information:
SYNTAX  INTEGER  {  
    other(1),  
    local(2),  
    netmgmt(3),  
    icmp(4),  
    egp(5),  
    ggp(6),  
    hello(7),  
    rip(8),  
    is-is(9),  
    es-is(10),  
    ciscoIgrp(11),  
    bbnSpfIgp(12),  
    ospf(13),  
    bgp(14)  
}  
ACCESS  read-only  
DESCRIPTION  
"The routing mechanism via which this route was learned.  
Inclusion of values for gateway routing protocols is not  
intended to imply that hosts should support those protocols."  

To monitor only local routes, the test should be applied only on entries in the ipRouteProto table with value 2. The number of entries in the whole ipRouteProto table has to be counted and the boundaries on the number has to be applied.

**Example SnmpMonitor used to test if the number of local static route entries are between 3 or 10.**

```xml  
<service name="All-Static-Routes" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">  
  <parameter key="oid" value="/1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.9" /> ①  
  <parameter key="walk" value="true" /> ②  
  <parameter key="operator" value="=" /> ③  
  <parameter key="operand" value="2" /> ④  
  <parameter key="match-all" value="count" /> ⑤  
  <parameter key="minimum" value="3" /> ⑥  
  <parameter key="maximum" value="10" /> ⑦  
</service>  
<monitor service="All-Static-Routes" class-name="org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SnmpMonitor" />  
```

① OID for SNMP table ipRouteProto  
② Enable *walk mode* to test every entry in the table against the test criteria  
③ Test operator for integer  
④ Integer 2 as operand for testing local route entries  
⑤ Test in *walk mode* has is set to *count* to get the number of entries in the table regarding *operator* and *operand*
3.6.37. SshMonitor

The SSH monitor tests the availability of a SSH service. During the poll an attempt is made to connect on the specified port. If the connection request is successful, then the service is considered up. Optionally, the banner line generated by the service may be parsed and compared against a pattern before the service is considered up.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SshMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 55. Monitor specific parameters for the SshMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>banner</td>
<td>Regular expression to be matched against the service’s banner.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client-ban\r\ndner</td>
<td>The client banner that OpenNMS Horizon will use to identify itself on the service.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>SSH-1.99-OpenNMS_1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>Regular expression to be matched against the service’s banner. Deprecated, please use the banner parameter instead. Note that this parameter takes precedence over the banner parameter, though.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>TCP port to which SSH connection shall be tried.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to establish the SSH connection.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds for SSH connection establishment.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
3.6.38. SSLCertMonitor

This monitor is used to test if a SSL certificate presented by a remote network server are valid. A certificate is invalid if its initial time is prior to the current time, or if the current time is prior to 7 days (configurable) before the expiration time. The monitor only supports SSL on the socket and does not support a higher level protocol above it. Additionally, it does not support Server Name Indication (SNI) and so is unable to validate different certificates if they would be presented on the same connection.

You can simulate the behavior by running a command like this:

```
echo | openssl s_client -connect <site>:<port> 2>/dev/null | openssl x509 -noout -dates
```

The output shows you the time range a certificate is valid:

```
notBefore=Dec 24 14:11:34 2013 GMT
notAfter=Dec 25 10:37:40 2014 GMT
```

You can configure a threshold in days applied on the `notAfter` date.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SSLCertMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 56. Monitor specific parameters for the SSLCertMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>port</code></td>
<td>TCP port for the service with SSL certificate.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Default value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get the certificate state</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait before next attempt.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>days</td>
<td>Number of days before the certificate expires that we mark the service as failed.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The monitor has no support for communicating on other protocol layers above the SSL session layer. It is not able to send a Host header for HTTPS, or issue a STARTTLS command for IMAP, POP3, SMTP, FTP, XMPP, LDAP, or NNTP.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to monitor SSL certificates on services like IMAPS, SMTPS and HTTPS. If the certificates expire within 30 days the service goes down and indicates this issue in the reason of the monitor. In this example the monitoring interval is reduced to test the certificate every 2 hours (7,200,000 ms). Configuration in `poller-configuration.xml` is as the following:
3.6.39. StrafePingMonitor

This monitor is used to monitor packet delay variation to a specific endpoint using ICMP. The main use case is to monitor a WAN end point and visualize packet loss and ICMP packet round trip time deviation. The StrafePingMonitor performs multiple ICMP echo requests (ping) and stores the response-time of each as well as the packet loss, in a RRD file. Credit is due to Tobias Oetiker, as this graphing feature is an adaptation of the SmokePing tool that he developed.
Figure 16. Visualization of a graph from the StrafePingMonitor

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.StrafePingMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Monitor specific parameters for the StrafePingMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait before assuming that a packet has not responded</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>The number of retries to attempt when a packet fails to respond in the given timeout</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ping-count</td>
<td>The number of pings to attempt each interval</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>failure-ping-count</td>
<td>The number of pings that need to fail for the service to be considered down</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait-interval</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait between each ICMP echo-request packet</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rrd-repository</td>
<td>The location to write RRD data. Generally, you will not want to change this from default</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>$OPENNMS_HOME/share/rrd/response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rrd-base-name</td>
<td>The name of the RRD file to write (minus the extension, .rrd or .jrb)</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>strafeping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The StrafePingMonitor is typically used on WAN connections and not activated for every ICMP enabled device in your network. Further this monitor is much I/O heavier than just a simple RRD
graph with a single ICMP response time measurement. By default you can find a separate poller package in the 'poller-configuration.xml' called strafer. Configure the include-range or a filter to enable monitoring for devices with the service StrafePing.

💡 Don't forget to assign the service StrafePing on the IP interface to be activated.

The following example enables the monitoring for the service StrafePing on IP interfaces in the range 10.0.0.1 until 10.0.0.20. Additionally the Nodes have to be in a surveillance category named Latency.

```xml
<package name="strafer">
  <filter>categoryName == 'Latency'</filter>
  <include-range begin="10.0.0.1" end="10.0.0.20"/>
  <rrd step="300">
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:1:2016</rra>
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:12:1488</rra>
    <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:288:366</rra>
    <rra>RRA:MAX:0.5:288:366</rra>
    <rra>RRA:MIN:0.5:288:366</rra>
  </rrd>
  <service name="StrafePing" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
    <parameter key="retry" value="0"/>
    <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
    <parameter key="ping-count" value="20"/>
    <parameter key="failure-ping-count" value="20"/>
    <parameter key="wait-interval" value="50"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
    <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="strafeping"/>
  </service>
  <downtime interval="30000" begin="0" end="300000"/>
  <downtime interval="300000" begin="300000" end="43200000"/>
  <downtime interval="600000" begin="43200000" end="432000000"/>
  <downtime begin="432000000" delete="true"/>
</package>
```

3.6.40. TcpMonitor

This monitor is used to test IP Layer 4 connectivity using TCP. The monitor establishes an TCP connection to a specific port. To test the availability of the service, the greetings banner of the application is evaluated. The behavior is similar to a simple test using the telnet command as shown in the example.
Simulating behavior of the monitor with `telnet`

```
root@vagrant:~# telnet 127.0.0.1 22
Trying 127.0.0.1...
Connected to 127.0.0.1.
Escape character is '^]'.
SSH-2.0-OpenSSH_6.6.1p1 Ubuntu-2ubuntu2
```

① Service greeting banner

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.TcpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 57. Monitor specific parameters for the TcpMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>TCP port of the application.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries before the service is marked as down.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the TCP service.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banner</td>
<td>Evaluation of the service connection banner with regular expression.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By default any banner result is valid.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

This example shows to test if the ICA service is available on TCP port 1494. The test evaluates the connection banner starting with ICA.
3.6.41. SystemExecuteMonitor

If it is required to execute a system call or run a script to determine a service status, the SystemExecuteMonitor can be used. It is calling a script or system command, if required it provides additional arguments to the call. To determine the status of the service the SystemExecuteMonitor can rely on 0 or a non-0 exit code of system call. As an alternative, the output of the system call can be matched against a banner. If the banner is part of the output the status is interpreted as up. If the banner is not available in the output the status is determined as down.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.SystemExecuteMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

Table 58. Monitor specific parameters for the SystemExecuteMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>script</td>
<td>The system-call to execute.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>args</td>
<td>The arguments to hand over to the system-call. It supports variable replacement, see below.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banner</td>
<td>A string that is match against the output of the system-call. If the output contains the banner, the service is determined as UP.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The parameter args supports variable replacement for the following set of variables.

Table 59. Variables which can be used in the configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${timeout}</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds, based on config of the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${timeoutsec}</td>
<td>Timeout in seconds, based on config of the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${retry}</td>
<td>Amount of retries based on config of the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${svcname}</td>
<td>Service name based on the config of the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${ipaddr}</td>
<td>IP-address of the interface the service is bound to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${nodeid}</td>
<td>Nodeid of the node the monitor is associated to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${nodelabel}</td>
<td>Nodelabel of the node the monitor is associated to.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

```xml
<parameter key="args" value="-i ${ipaddr} -t ${timeout}"/>
<parameter key="args" value="http://${nodelabel}/${svcname}/static"/>
```

**SystemExecuteMonitor vs GpMonitor**

The SystemExecuteMonitor is the successor of the GpMonitor. The main differences are:

- Variable replacement for the parameter args
- There are no fixed arguments handed to the system-call
- The SystemExecuteMonitor supports RemotePoller deployment

To migrate services from the GpMonitor to the SystemExecuteMonitor it is required to alter the parameter args. To match the arguments called hoption for the hostAddress and toption for the timeoutInSeconds. The args string that matches the GpMonitor call looks like this:

```xml
<parameter key="args" value="--hostname ${ipaddr} --timeout ${timeoutsec}" />
```
To migrate the GpMonitor parameters hoption and toption just replace the --hostname and --timeout directly in the args key.

### 3.6.42. VmwareCimMonitor

This monitor is part of the VMware integration provided in Provisiond. The monitor is specialized to test the health status provided from all Host System (host) sensor data.

⚠️ This monitor is only executed if the host is in power state **on**.
This monitor requires to import hosts with Provisiond and the VMware import. OpenNMS Horizon requires network access to VMware vCenter and the hosts. To get the sensor data the credentials from vmware-config.xml for the responsible vCenter is used. The following asset fields are filled from Provisiond and is provided by VMware import feature: VMware Management Server, VMware Managed Entity Type and the foreignId which contains an internal VMware vCenter Identifier.

The global health status is evaluated by testing all available host sensors and evaluating the state of each sensor. A sensor state could be represented as the following:

- **Unknown(0)**
- **OK(5)**
- **Degraded/Warning(10)**
- **Minor failure(15)**
- **Major failure(20)**
- **Critical failure(25)**
- **Non-recoverable error(30)**

The service is **up** if **all** sensors have the status **OK(5)**. If any sensor gives another status then **OK(5)** the service is marked as **down**. The monitor error reason contains a list of all sensors which not returned status **OK(5)**.

In case of using **Distributed Power Management** the **standBy** state forces a service **down**. The health status is gatherred with a direct connection to the host and in stand by this connection is unavailable and the service is **down**. To deal with stand by states, the configuration **ignoreStandBy** can be used. In case of a stand by state, the service is considered as **up**.

state can be changed see the **ignoreStandBy** configuration parameter.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.VmwareCimMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

Table 60. Monitor specific parameters for the VmwareCimMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries before the service is marked as down.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait collecting the CIM sensor data.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.6.43. VmwareMonitor

This monitor is part of the VMware integration provided in Provisiond and test the power state of a virtual machine (VM) or a host system (host). If the power state of a VM or host is *poweredOn* the service is *up*. The state *off* the service on the VM or Host is marked as *down*. By default *standBy* is also considered as *down*. In case of using Distributed Power Management the *standBy* state can be changed see the *ignoreStandBy* configuration parameter.

The information for the status of a virtual machine is collected from the responsible *VMware vCenter* using the credentials from the *vmware-config.xml*. It is also required to get specific asset fields assigned to an imported virtual machine and host system. The following asset fields are required, which are populated by the VMware integration in Provisiond: *VMware Management Server*, *VMware Managed Entity Type* and the *foreignId* which contains an internal *VMware vCenter Identifier*.

### Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.VmwareMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration and Usage

*Table 61. Monitor specific parameters for the VmwareMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries before the service is marked as <em>down</em>.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.6.44. Win32ServiceMonitor

The Win32ServiceMonitor enables OpenNMS Horizon to monitor the running state of any Windows service. The service status is monitored using the Microsoft Windows® provided SNMP agent providing the LAN Manager MIB-II. For this reason it is required the SNMP agent and OpenNMS Horizon is correctly configured to allow queries against part of the MIB tree. The status of the service is monitored by polling the

```plaintext
svSvcOperatingState = 1.3.6.1.4.1.77.1.2.3.1.3
```

of a given service by the display name.

### Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.Win32ServiceMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration and Usage

*Table 62. Monitor specific parameters for the Win32ServiceMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of attempts to get the service state from SNMP agent</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>From snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for the SNMP result before next attempt.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>From snmp-config.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service-name</td>
<td>The name of the service, this should be the exact name of the Windows service to monitor as it appears in the Services MSC snap-in. Short names such as you might use with net start will not work here.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>Server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Troubleshooting

If you've created a Win32ServiceMonitor poller and are having difficulties with it not being monitored properly on your hosts, chances are there is a difference in the name of the service you've created, and the actual name in the registry.

For example, I need to monitor a process called Example Service on one of our production servers. I retrieve the Display name from looking at the service in service manager, and create an entry in the poller-configuration.xml files using the exact name in the Display name field.

However, what I don't see is the errant space at the end of the service display name that is revealed when doing the following:

```bash
snmpwalk -v 2c -c <communitystring> <hostname> .1.3.6.1.4.1.77.1.2.3.1.1
```

This provides the critical piece of information I am missing:

```plaintext
iso.3.6.1.4.1.77.1.2.3.1.1.31.83.116.97.102.102.119.97.114.101.32.83.84.65.70.70.86.73 .69.87.32.66.97.99.107.103.114.111.117.110.100.32 = STRING: "Example Service "
```

Note the extra space before the close quote.

The extra space at the end of the name was difficult to notice in the service manager GUI, but is easily visible in the snmpwalk output. The right way to fix this would be to correct the service Display name field on the server, however, the intent of this procedure is to recommend verifying the true name using snmpwalk as opposed to relying on the service manager GUI.

#### Examples

Monitoring the service running state of the Task Scheduler on an English local Microsoft Windows® Server requires at minimum the following entry in the poller-configuration.xml.
3.6.45. WsManMonitor

This monitor can be used to issue a WS-Man Get command and validate the results using a SPEL expression.

**Monitor facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.WsManMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration and Usage**

*Table 63. Monitor specific parameters for the WsManMonitor*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>resource-uri</td>
<td>Resource URI</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule</td>
<td>SPEL expression applied against the result of the Get</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selector.</td>
<td>Used to filter the result set. All selectors must prefixed with selector.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>(None)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following monitor will issue a Get against the configured resource and verify that the correct service tag is returned:
3.6.46. XmpMonitor

The XMP monitor tests for XMP service/agent availability by establishing an XMP session and querying the target agent's sysObjectID variable contained in the Core MIB. The service is considered available when the session attempt succeeds and the agent returns its sysObjectID without error.

Monitor facts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Name</th>
<th>org.opennms.netmgt.poller.monitors.XmpMonitor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Enabled</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration and Usage

These parameters can be set in the XMP service entry in collectd-configuration.xml and will override settings from xmp-config.xml. Also, don't forget to add an entry in response-graph.properties so that response values will be graphed.

Table 64. Monitor specific parameters for the XmpMonitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for a successful session.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenUser</td>
<td>The authenUser parameter for use with the XMP session.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>xmpUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>TCP port to connect to for XMP session establishment</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>5270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mib</td>
<td>Name of MIB to query</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>Name of MIB object to query</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>sysObjectID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
Adding entry in collectd-configuration.xml

```xml
<service name="XMP" interval="300000" user-defined="false" status="on">
  <parameter key="timeout" value="3000"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-repository" value="/opt/opennms/share/rrd/response"/>
  <parameter key="rrd-base-name" value="xmp"/>
  <parameter key="ds-name" value="xmp"/>
</service>
<monitor service="XMP" class-name="org.opennms.netmgmt.poller.monitors.XmpMonitor"/>
```

Add entry in response-graph.properties

```properties
reports=icmp, \n xmp, \ . . . .
report.xmp.name=XMP
report.xmp.columns=xmp
report.xmp.type=responseTime
report.xmp.command="--title="XMP Response Time" \n  --vertical-label="Seconds" \n  DEF:rtMills={rrd1}:xmp:AVERAGE \n  DEF:minRtMills={rrd1}:xmp:MIN \n  DEF:maxRtMills={rrd1}:xmp:MAX \n  CDEF:rt=rtMills,1000,/ \n  CDEF:minRt=minRtMills,1000,/ \n  CDEF:maxRt=maxRtMills,1000,/ \n  LINE1:rt#0000ff:"Response Time" \n  GPRINT:rt:AVERAGE:" Avg \: %8.2lf %s" \n  GPRINT:rt:MIN:"Min \: %8.2lf %s" \n  GPRINT:rt:MAX:"Max \: %8.2lf %s\n"
```
Chapter 4. Performance Management

4.1. Stress Testing

The `metrics:stress Karaf Shell` command can be used to simulate load on the active persistence strategy, whether it be RRDtool, JRobin, or Newts.

The tool works by generating collection sets, similar to those built when performing data collection, and sending these to the active persistence layer. By using the active persistence layer, we ensure that we use the same write path which is used by the actual data collection services.

To get started, log into the Karaf Shell on your system:

```
ssh -p 8101 admin@localhost
```

Generate samples for **10 nodes** every **15 seconds** and printing the statistic report every **30 seconds**:

```
metrics:stress -n 10 -i 15 -r 30
```

While active, the command will continue to generate and persist collection sets. During this time you can monitor the system I/O and other relevant statistics.

When your done, use **CTRL+C** to stop the stress tool.

A complete list of options is available using:

```
metrics:stress --help
```

4.1.1. Interpreting the output

The statistics output by the tool can be be interpreted as follows:

**numeric-attributes-generated**

- The number of numeric attributes that were sent to the persistence layer. We have no guarantee as to whether or not these were actually persisted.

**string-attributes-generated**

- The number of string attributes that were sent to the persistence layer. We have no guarantee as to whether or not these were actually persisted.

**batches**

- The count is used to indicate how many batches of collection sets (one at every interval) were sent to the persistence layer. The timers show how much time was spent generating the batch, and sending the batch to the persistence layer.
4.2. Collectors

4.2.1. WS-Management

Web Services-Management (WS-Management) is a DMTF open standard defining a SOAP-based protocol for the management of servers, devices, applications and various Web services. Windows Remote Management (WinRM) is the Microsoft implementation of WS-Management Protocol. OpenNMS Horizon currently provides support for detecting, polling and collecting metrics from WS-Man endpoints.

Setup

Before setting up OpenNMS Horizon to communicate with a WS-Management agent, you should confirm that it is properly configured and reachable from the OpenNMS Horizon system. If you need help enabling the WS-Management agent, consult the documentation from the manufacturer. Here are some link resources that could help:

- Installation and Configuration for Windows Remote Management
- Troubleshooting WinRM connection and authentication

We suggest using the Openwsman command line client for validating authentication and connectivity. Packages are available for most distributions under wsmancli.

For example:

```bash
wsman identify -h localhost -P 5985 -u wsman -p secret
```

Once validated, add the agent specific details to the OpenNMS Horizon configuration, defined in the next section.

Troubleshooting and Commands

For troubleshooting there is a set of commands you can use in Powershell verified on Microsoft Windows Server 2012.

Enable WinRM in PowerShell

```powershell
Enable-PSRemoting
```

Setup Firewall for WinRM over HTTP

```bash
netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="WinRM-HTTP" dir=in localport=5985 protocol=TCP action=allow
```
Setup Firewall for WinRM over HTTPS

```
netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="WinRM-HTTPS" dir=in localport=5986 protocol=TCP action=allow
```

Test WinRM on local Windows Server

```
winrm id
```

Show WinRM configuration on Windows Server

```
winrm get winrm/config
```

Show listener for configuration on Windows Server

```
winrm e winrm/config/listener
```

Test connectivity from a Linux system

```
nc -z -w1 <windows-server-ip-or-host> 5985;echo $?
```

Use BasicAuthentication just with WinRM over HTTPS with verifiable certificates in production environment.

Enable BasicAuthentication

```
winrm set winrm/config/client/auth '@{Basic="true"}';
winrm set winrm/config/service/auth '@{Basic="true"}';
winrm set winrm/config/service '@{AllowUnencrypted="true"}';
```

Agent Configuration

The agent specific configuration details are maintained in etc/wsman-config.xml. This file has a similar structure as etc/snmp-config.xml, which the reader may already be familiar with.

This file is consulted when a connection to a WS-Man Agent is made. If the IP address of the agent is matched by the range, specific or ip-match elements of a definition, then the attributes on that definition are used to connect to the agent. Otherwise, the attributes on the outer wsman-config definition are used.

This etc/wsman-config.xml files is automatically reloaded when modified.

Here is an example with several definitions:
<wsman-config retry="3" timeout="1500" ssl="true" strict-ssl="false" path="/wsman">
<definition ssl="true" strict-ssl="false" path="/wsman" username="root" password="calvin" product-vendor="Dell" product-version="iDRAC 6">
  <range begin="192.168.1.1" end="192.168.1.10"/>
</definition>
<definition ssl="false" port="5985" path="/wsman" username="Administrator" password="P@ssword">
  <ip-match>172.23.1-4.1-255</ip-match>
  <specific>172.23.1.105</specific>
</definition>
</wsman-config>

### Table 65. Collector configuration attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>HTTP Connection and response timeout in milliseconds.</td>
<td>HTTP client default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries on connection failure.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Username for basic authentication.</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password used for basic authentication.</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>HTTP/S port</td>
<td>Default for protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max-elements</td>
<td>Maximum number of elements to retrieve in a single request.</td>
<td>no limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssl</td>
<td>Enable SSL</td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strict-ssl</td>
<td>Enforce SSL certificate verification.</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>Path in the URL to the WS-Management service.</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product-vendor</td>
<td>Used to overwrite the detected product vendor.</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product-version</td>
<td>Used to overwrite the detected product version.</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gss-auth</td>
<td>Enables GSS authentication.</td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When enabled a reverse lookup is performed on the target IP address in order to determine the canonical host name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you try to connect against Microsoft Windows Server make sure to set specific ports for WinRM connections. By default Microsoft Windows Server uses port TCP/5985 for plain text and port TCP/5986 for SSL connections.

**Collector**

Configuration for the WS-Management collector is stored in `etc/wsman-datacollection-config.xml` and `etc/wsman-datacollection.d/*.xml`. 
The contents of these files are automatically merged and reloaded when changed. The default WS-Management collection looks as follows:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<wsman-datacollection-config rrd-repository="${install.share.dir}/rrd/snmp/">
  <collection name="default">
    <rrd step="300">
      <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:1:2016</rra>
      <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:12:1488</rra>
      <rra>RRA:AVERAGE:0.5:288:366</rra>
      <rra>RRA:MAX:0.5:288:366</rra>
      <rra>RRA:MIN:0.5:288:366</rra>
    </rrd>
    <!--
    Include all of the available system definitions
    -->
    <include-all-system-definitions/>
  </collection>
</wsman-datacollection-config>
```

The magic happens with the `<include-all-system-definitions/>` element which automatically includes all of the system definitions into the collection group.

If required, you can include a specific system-definition with `<include-system-definition>sys-def-name</include-system-definition>`.

System definitions and related groups can be defined in the root `etc/wsman-datacollection-config.xml` file, but it is preferred that be added to a device specific configuration files in `etc/wsman-datacollection-config.d/*.xml`.

Avoid modifying any of the distribution configuration files and create new ones to store your specific details instead.

Here is an example configuration file for a Dell iDRAC:
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<wsman-datacollection-config>
  <group name="drac-system"
    resource-type="node">
    <attrib name="OtherIdentifyingInfo" index-of="#IdentifyingDescriptions matches ".*ServiceTag" alias="serviceTag" type="String"/>
  </group>
  
  <group name="drac-power-supply"
    resource-uri="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wscim/1/*"
    dialect="http://schemas.microsoft.com/wbem/wsman/1/WQL"
    filter="select InputVoltage,InstanceID,PrimaryStatus,SerialNumber,TotalOutputPower from DCIM_PowerSupplyView where DetailedState != 'Absent'"
    resource-type="dracPowerSupplyIndex">
    <attrib name="InputVoltage" alias="inputVoltage" type="Gauge"/>
    <attrib name="InstanceID" alias="instanceId" type="String"/>
    <attrib name="PrimaryStatus" alias="primaryStatus" type="Gauge"/>
    <attrib name="SerialNumber" alias="serialNumber" type="String"/>
    <attrib name="TotalOutputPower" alias="totalOutputPower" type="Gauge"/>
  </group>
  
  <system-definition name="Dell iDRAC (All Version)"
    rule="#productVendor matches '^Dell.*' and #productVersion matches '.*iDRAC.*'">
    <include-group>drac-system</include-group>
    <include-group>drac-power-supply</include-group>
  </system-definition>
</wsman-datacollection-config>

System Definitions

Rules in the system definition are written using SpEL expressions.

The expression has access to the following variables in it's evaluation context:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(root)</td>
<td>org.opennms.netmgt.model.OnmsNode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agent</td>
<td>org.opennms.netmgt.collection.api.CollectionAgent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>productVendor</td>
<td>java.lang.String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>productVersion</td>
<td>java.lang.String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a particular agent is matched by any of the rules, then the collector will attempt to collect the referenced groups from the agent.
Group Definitions

Groups are retrieved by issuing an Enumerate command against a particular Resource URI and parsing the results. The Enumerate commands can include an optional filter in order to filter the records and attributes that are returned.

When configuring a filter, you must also specify the dialect.

The resource type used by the group must of be of type node or a generic resource type. Interface level resources are not supported.

When using a generic resource type, the IndexStorageStrategy cannot be used since records have no implicit index. Instead, you must use an alternative such as the SiblingColumnStorageStrategy.

If a record includes a multi-valued key, you can collect the value at a specific index with an index-of expression. This is best demonstrated with an example. Let’s assume we wanted to collect the ServiceTag from the following record:

```xml
<IdentifyingDescriptions>CIM:GUID</IdentifyingDescriptions>
<IdentifyingDescriptions>CIM:Tag</IdentifyingDescriptions>
<IdentifyingDescriptions>DCIM:ServiceTag</IdentifyingDescriptions>
<OtherIdentifyingInfo>45454C4C-3700-104A-8052-C3C01BB25031</OtherIdentifyingInfo>
<OtherIdentifyingInfo>mainsystemchassis</OtherIdentifyingInfo>
<OtherIdentifyingInfo>C8BBBP1</OtherIdentifyingInfo>
```

Specifying, the attribute name OtherIdentifyingInfo would not be sufficient, since there are multiple values for that key. Instead, we want to retrieve the value for the OtherIdentifyingInfo key at the same index where IdentifyingDescriptions is set to DCIM:ServiceTag.

This can be achieved using the following attribute definition:

```xml
<attrib name="OtherIdentifyingInfo" index-of="#IdentifyingDescriptions matches'.*ServiceTag'" alias="serviceTag" type="String"/>
```

Detector

The WS-Management detector attempts to connect to the agent defined in wsman-config.xml and issues an Identify command. If a valid response is received, the product vendor and product version are stored in the vendor and modelNumber fields of the associated node’s assets table.

For example, a Windows Server 2008 machine returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product Vendor</th>
<th>Microsoft Corporation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Product Version</td>
<td>OS: 6.1.7601 SP: 1.0 Stack: 2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If these assets field are being used for another purpose, this behavior can be disabled by settings the updateAssets parameters to false in the detector configuration of the appropriate foreign
Some agents may respond to the Identify command with generic identities such as Openwsman 2.0.0. These values can be overridden by specifying the product-vendor and product-version attributes in wsman-config.xml.

Example detector configuration:

```xml
<detector name="WS-Man" class="org.opennms.netmgt.provision.detector.wsman.WsManDetector">
  <parameter key="updateAssets" value="true"/>
</detector>
```

The response is logged as DEBUG information in provisiond.log and looks like the following:

```xml
ID: 3
Response-Code: 200
309Encoding: UTF-8
Content-Type: application/soap+xml; charset=UTF-8
Headers: {Content-Length=[787], content-type=[application/soap+xml; charset=UTF-8], Date=[Mon, 08 Feb 2016 14:21:20 GMT], Server=[Microsoft-HTTPAPI/2.0]}
Payload:
  <s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope" xml:lang="en-US">
    <s:Header/>
    <s:Body>
        <wsmid:ProductVendor>Microsoft Corporation</wsmid:ProductVendor> ①
        <wsmid:ProductVersion>OS: 6.2.9200 SP: 0.0 Stack: 3.0</wsmid:ProductVersion> ②
        <wsmid:SecurityProfiles>
          <wsmid:SecurityProfileName>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/basic</wsmid:SecurityProfileName>
        </wsmid:SecurityProfiles>
      </wsmid:IdentifyResponse>
    </s:Body>
  </s:Envelope>
```

① ProductVendor: Stored to the asset field vendor

② ProductVersion: Stored in the asset field modelNumber
The information of the asset fields are used in the *System Definition Rule* to decide which performance metrics will be gathered from *Collectd*. 
Chapter 5. Events

Events are central to the operation of the OpenNMS Horizon platform, so it's critical to have a firm grasp of this topic.

Whenever something in OpenNMS Horizon appears to work by magic, it's probably events working behind the curtain.

5.1. Anatomy of an Event

Events are structured historical records of things that happen in OpenNMS Horizon and the nodes, interfaces, and services it manages. Every event has a number of fixed fields and zero or more parameters.

Mandatory Fields

**UEI (Universal Event Identifier)**

A string uniquely identifying the event's type. UEIs are typically formatted in the style of a URI, but the only requirement is that they start with the string `uei`.

**Event Label**

A short, static label summarizing the gist of all instances of this event.

**Description**

A long-form description describing all instances of this event.

**Log Message**

A long-form log message describing this event, optionally including expansions of fields and parameters so that the value is tailored to the event at hand.

**Severity**

A severity for this event type. Possible values range from `Cleared` to `Critical`.

**Event ID**

A numeric identifier used to look up a specific event in the OpenNMS Horizon system.

Notable Optional Fields

**Operator Instruction**

A set of instructions for an operator to respond appropriately to an event of this type.

**Alarm Data**

If this field is provided for an event, OpenNMS Horizon will create, update, or clear alarms for events of that type according to the alarm-data specifics. For more about alarms and how they relate to events, see [alarms-introduction].

138
5.2. Sources of Events

Events may originate within OpenNMS Horizon itself or from outside.

Internally-generated events can be the result of the platform's monitoring and management functions (e.g. a monitored node becoming totally unavailable results in an event with the UEI uei.opennms.org/nodes/nodeDown) or they may act as inputs or outputs of housekeeping processes.

The following subsections summarize the mechanisms by which externally-created events can arrive.

5.2.1. SNMP Traps

If SNMP-capable devices in the network are configured to send traps to OpenNMS Horizon, these traps are transformed into events according to pre-configured rules. The Trapd service daemon, which enables OpenNMS Horizon to receive SNMP traps, is enabled by default.

Disabling the Trapd service daemon will render OpenNMS Horizon incapable of receiving SNMP traps.

Event definitions are included with OpenNMS Horizon for traps from many vendors' equipment.

5.2.2. Syslog Messages

Syslog messages sent over the network to OpenNMS Horizon can be transformed into events according to pre-configured rules.

The Syslogd service daemon, which enables OpenNMS Horizon to receive syslog messages over the network, must be enabled for this functionality to work. This service daemon is disabled by default.

5.2.3. TL1 Autonomous Messages

Autonomous messages can be retrieved from certain TL1-enabled equipment and transformed into events.

The Tl1d service daemon, which enables OpenNMS Horizon to receive TL1 autonomous messages, must be enabled for this functionality to work. This service daemon is disabled by default.

5.2.4. XML-TCP

Any application or script can create custom events in OpenNMS Horizon by sending properly-formatted XML data over a TCP socket.

5.2.5. ReST

Posting an event in XML format to the appropriate endpoint in the OpenNMS Horizon ReST API will
cause the creation of a corresponding event, just as with the XML-TCP interface.

5.3. The Event Bus

At the heart of OpenNMS Horizon lies an event bus. Any OpenNMS Horizon component can publish events to the bus, and any component can subscribe to receive events of interest that have been published on the bus. This publish-subscribe model enables components to use events as a mechanism to send messages to each other. For example, the provisioning subsystem of OpenNMS Horizon publishes a node-added event whenever a new node is added to the system. Other subsystems with an interest in new nodes subscribe to the node-added event and automatically receive these events, so they know to start monitoring and managing the new node if their configuration dictates. The publisher and subscriber components do not need to have any knowledge of each other, allowing for a clean division of labor and lessening the programming burden to add entirely new OpenNMS Horizon subsystems or modify the behavior of existing ones.

5.4. Forwarding Events to Elasticsearch 1.x

OpenNMS can be configured to forward all Events and Alarms to Elasticsearch 1.x for indexing, long time archiving, plotting with Grafana and browsing with Kibana.

Elasticsearch is not intended as a replacement for PostgreSQL which is still a required component to run OpenNMS.

First check that your OpenNMS installation supports this feature. If it does there should be a ${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/org.opennms.features.elasticsearch.eventforwarder.cfg file.

Now open the file, review its content and make sure to apply the correct settings depending on your environment.

The following table describes all settings and possible values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>elasticsearchCluster</td>
<td>opennms</td>
<td>The name of the Elasticsearch cluster as specified in the Elasticsearch configuration file (required).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elasticsearchIp</td>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>the TransportClient remote host ip to use. Has the same meaning as the ip options of the camel-elasticsearch component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logEventDescription</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Whether to forward the event description to Elasticsearch. The reason it is off by default is that it is usually some standard, generic, repetitive and possibly long text which will grow the index without adding useful information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cache_max_ttl</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>The number of minutes the node information is kept in the cache. Set to 0 to disable (which is the default and is generally safe because the cache knows when to refresh itself, by intercepting nodeUpdated and similar events)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cache_max_size</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>The number of node information entries to be kept in the cache before eviction start. Set to 0 to disable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first two (elasticsearchCluster and elasticsearchIp) settings are the most likely to require changing. If unsure do not change the remaining three.

Once you are sure everything is correctly configured you can activate the Elasticsearch forwarder by log into the OSGi console and install the feature.

**OSGi login and installation of the Elasticsearch forwarder**

```
ssh admin@localhost -p 8101
features:install opennms-elasticsearch-event-forwarder
```

You can check the routes status with the camel:* commands and/or inspect the log with log:tail for any obvious errors. The feature has a trace level logging that can be used to trace operations.

- **documentation** on using the OSGi console embedded in OpenNMS and the relative camel commands.

If all goes well events and alarms will be pushed in realtime into Elasticsearch. You should now be able to view the events and graph them with Kibana.

If you have never used Kibana before you should probably start with Kibana 3 which is simpler. Kibana 4 is more powerful, but harder to get started with.

### 5.4.1. A basic Elasticsearch configuration

This section describes to get a minimal working configuration with OpenNMS and Elasticsearch. Install Elasticsearch on the same host as OpenNMS and edit the elasticsearch.yml as follows:

**Example configuration for Elasticsearch**

```
cluster.name: opennms
network.host: 127.0.0.1
discovery.zen.ping.multicast.enabled: false
discovery.zen.ping.unicast.hosts: ["127.0.0.1"]
```

- **Running OpenNMS and Elasticsearch on the same host is not recommended for production or busy environments.**

### 5.4.2. Troubleshooting

If events are not reaching Elasticsearch check if OpenNMS is correctly configured, in particular review the elasticsearchCluster and elasticsearchIp parameters.
If those appear to be correct verify that OpenNMS can communicate with Elasticsearch over port 9300.

Review the OSGi log with log:tail or the camel:* commands.
Chapter 6. Provisioning

6.1. Introduction

The introduction of OpenNMS version 1.8 empowers enterprises and services providers like never before with a new service daemon for maintaining the managed entity inventory in OpenNMS. This new daemon, Provisiond, unifies all previous entity control mechanisms available in 1.6 (Capsd and the Importer), into a new and improved, massively parallel, policy based provisioning system. System integrators should note, Provisiond comes complete with a RESTful Web Service API for easy integration with external systems such as CRM or external inventory systems as well as an adapter API for interfacing with other management systems such as configuration management.

OpenNMS 1.0, introduced almost a decade ago now, provided a capabilities scanning daemon, Capsd, as the mechanism for provisioning managed entities. Capsd, deprecated with the release of 1.8.0, provided a rich automatic provisioning mechanism that simply required an IP address to seed its algorithm for creating and maintaining the managed entities (nodes, interfaces, and IP based services). Version 1.2 added and XML-RPC API as a more controlled (directed) strategy for provisioning services that was mainly used by non telco based service providers (i.e. managed hosting companies). Version 1.6 followed this up with yet another and more advanced mechanism called the Importer service daemon. The Importer provided large service providers with the ability to strictly control the OpenNMS entity provisioning with an XML based API for completely defining and controlling the entities where no discovery and service scanning was feasible.

The Importer service improved OpenNMS' scalability for maintaining managed entity databases by an order of magnitude. This daemon, while very simple in concept and yet extremely powerful and flexible provisioning improvement, has blazed the trail for Provisiond. The Importer service has been in production for 3 years in service provider networks maintaining entity counts of more than 50,000 node level entities on a single instances of OpenNMS. It is a rock solid provisioning tool.

Provisiond begins a new era of managed entity provisioning in OpenNMS.

6.2. Concepts

Provisioning is a term that is familiar to service providers (a.k.a. operators, a.k.a. telephone companies) and OSS systems but not so much in the non OSS enterprises.

Provisiond receives "requests" for adding managed entities via 2 basic mechanisms, the OpenNMS Horizon traditional "New Suspect" event, typically via the Discovery daemon, and the import requisition (XML definition of node entities) typically via the Provisioning Groups UI. If you are familiar with all previous releases of OpenNMS, you will recognize the New Suspect Event based Discovery to be what was previously the Capsd component of the auto discovery behavior. You will also recognize the import requisition to be of the Model Importer component of OpenNMS. Provisiond now unifies these two separate components into a massively parallel advanced policy based provisioning service.
6.2.1. Terminology

The following terms are used with respect to the OpenNMS Horizon provisioning system and are essential for understanding the material presented in this guide.

Entity

Entities are managed objects in OpenNMS Horizon such as Nodes, IP interfaces, SNMP Interfaces, and Services.

Foreign Source and Foreign ID

The *Importer* service from 1.6 introduced the idea of foreign sources and foreign IDs. The *Foreign Source* uniquely identifies a provisioning source and is still a basic attribute of importing node entities into OpenNMS Horizon. The concept is to provide an external (foreign) system with a way to uniquely identify itself and any node entities that it is requesting (via a requisition) to be provisioned into OpenNMS Horizon.

The *Foreign ID* is the unique node ID maintained in foreign system and the foreign source uniquely identifies the external system in OpenNMS Horizon.

OpenNMS Horizon uses the combination of the foreign source and foreign ID become the unique foreign key when synchronizing the set of nodes from each source with the nodes in the OpenNMS Horizon DB. This way the foreign system doesn’t have to keep track of the OpenNMS Horizon node IDs that are assigned when a node is first created. This is how *Provisiond* can decided if a node entity from an import requisition is new, has been changed, or needs to be deleted.

Foreign Source Definition

Additionally, the foreign source has been extended to also contain specifications for how entities should be discovered and managed on the nodes from each foreign source. The name of the foreign source has become pervasive within the provisioning system and is used to simply some of the complexities by weaving this name into:

- the name of the provisioning group in the Web-UI
- the name of the file containing the persisted requisition (as well as the pending requisition if it is in this state)
- the foreign-source attribute value inside the requisition (obviously, but, this is pointed out to indicate that the file name doesn’t necessarily have to equal the value of this attribute but is highly recommended as an OpenNMS Horizon best practice)
- the building attribute of the node defined in the requisition (this value is called “site” in the Web-UI and is assigned to the building column of the node's asset record by Provisiond and is the default value used in the Site Status View feature)

Import Requisition

Import requisition is the terminology OpenNMS Horizon uses to represent the set of nodes, specified in XML, to be provisioned from a foreign source into OpenNMS Horizon. The requisition schema (XSD) can be found at the following location. [http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/model-](http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/model-)
**Auto Discovery**

Auto discovery is the term used by OpenNMS Horizon to characterize the automatic provisioning of nodes entities. Currently, OpenNMS Horizon uses an ICMP ping sweep to find IP address on the network. For the IPs that respond and that are not currently in the DB, OpenNMS Horizon generates a new suspect event. When this event is received by Provisiond, it creates a node and it begins a node scan based on the default foreign source definition.

**Directed Discovery**

Provisiond takes over for the Model Importer found in version 1.6 which implemented a unique, first of its kind, controlled mechanism for specifying managed entities directly into OpenNMS Horizon from one or more data sources. These data sources often were in the form of an in-housed developed inventory or stand-alone provisioning system or even a set of element management systems. Using this mechanism, OpenNMS Horizon is directed to add, update, or delete a node entity exactly as defined by the external source. No discovery process is used for finding more interfaces or services.

**Enhanced Directed Discovery**

Directed discovery is enhanced with the capability to scan nodes that have been directed nodes for entities (interfaces).

**Policy Based Discovery**

The phrase, Policy based Directed Discovery, is a term that represents the latest step in OpenNMS Horizon provisioning evolution and best describes the new provisioning architecture now in OpenNMS Horizon for maintaining its inventory of managed entities. This term describes the control that is given over the Provisioning system to OpenNMS Horizon users for managing the behavior of the NMS with respect to the new entities that are being discovered. Current behaviors include persistence, data collection, service monitoring, and categorization policies.

### 6.2.2. Addressing Scalability

The explosive growth and density of the IT systems being deployed today to support not traditional IP services is impacting management systems like never before and is demanding from them tremendous amounts of scalability. The scalability of a management system is defined by its capacity for maintaining large numbers of managing entities coupled with its efficiency of managing the entities.

Today, it is not uncommon for OpenNMS Horizon deployments to find node entities with tens of thousands of physical interfaces being reported by SNMP agents due to virtualization (virtual hosts, interfaces, as well as networks). An NMS must be capable of using the full capacity every resource of its computing platform (hardware and OS) as effectively as possible in order to manage these environments. The days of writing scripts or single threaded applications will just no longer be able to do the work required an NMS when dealing with the scalability challenges facing systems and systems administrators working in this domain.
Parallelization and Non-Blocking I/O

Squeezing out every ounce of power from a management system’s platform (hardware and OS) is absolutely required to complete all the work of a fully functional NMS such as OpenNMS Horizon. Fortunately, the hardware and CPU architecture of a modern computing platform provides multiple CPUs with multiple cores having instruction sets that include support for atomic operations. While these very powerful resources are being provided by commodity systems, it makes the complexity of developing applications to use them vs. not using them, orders of magnitude more complex. However, because of scalability demands of our complex IT environments, multi-threaded NMS applications are now essential and this has fully exposed the complex issues of concurrency in software development.

OpenNMS Horizon has stepped up to this challenge with its new concurrency strategy. This strategy is based on a technique that combines the efficiency of parallel (asynchronous) operations (traditionally used by most effectively by single threaded applications) with the power of a fully current, non-blocking, multi-threaded design. The non-blocking component of this new concurrency strategy added greater complexity but OpenNMS Horizon gained orders of magnitude in increased scalability.

Java Runtimes, based on the Sun JVM, have provided implementations for processor based atomic operations and is the basis for OpenNMS Horizon' non-blocking concurrency algorithms.

Provisioning Policies

Just because you can, doesn’t mean you should! Because the massively parallel operations being created for Provisiond allows tremendous numbers of nodes, interfaces, and services to be very rapidly discovered and persisted, doesn't mean it should. A policy API was created for Provisiond that allows implementations to be developed that can be applied to control the behavior of Provisiond. The 1.8 release includes a set of flexible provisioning policies that control the persistence of entities and their attributes constrain monitoring behavior.

When nodes are imported or re-scanned, there is, potentially, a set of zero or more provisioning policies that are applied. The policies are defined in the foreign source’s definition. The policies for an auto-discovered node or nodes from provisioning groups that don’t have a foreign source definition, are the policies defined in the default foreign source definition.

The Default Foreign Source Definition

Contained in the libraries of the Provisioning service is the "template" or default foreign source. The template stored in the library is used until the OpenNMS Horizon admin user alters the default from the Provisioning Groups WebUI. Upon edit, this template is exported to the OpenNMS Horizon etc/ directory with the file name: `default-foreign-source.xml.
Default Foreign Source

6.3. Getting Started

An NMS is of no use until it is setup for monitoring and entities are added to the system. OpenNMS Horizon installs with a base configuration with a configuration that is sufficient for service level monitoring and performance management quickly up and running. As soon as managed entities are provisioned, the base configuration will automatically begin monitoring and reporting.

Generally speaking, there are two methods of provisioning in OpenNMS Horizon: Auto Discovery and Directed Discovery. We'll start with Auto Discovery, but first, we should quickly review the configuration of SNMP so that newly discovered devices can be immediately scanned for entities as
well as have reporting and thresholding available.

### 6.3.1. Provisioning the SNMP Configuration

OpenNMS Horizon requires that the SNMP configuration to be properly setup for your network in order to properly understand Network and Node topology as well as to automatically enabled performance data collection. Network topology is updated as nodes (a.k.a. devices or hosts) are provisioned. Navigate to the *Admin/Configure SNMP Community Names* as shown below.

Provisiond includes an option to add community information in the *Single Node* provisioning interface. This, is equivalent of entering a single IP address in the screen with the convenience of setting the community string at the same time a node is provisioned. See the *Quick Node Add* feature below for more details about this capability.

This screen sets up SNMP within OpenNMS Horizon for agents listening on IP addresses 10.1.1.1 through 10.254.254.254. These settings are optimized into the *snmp-configuration.xml* file. Optimization means that the minimal configuration possible will be written. Any IP addresses already configured that are eclipsed by this range will be removed. Here is the resulting configuration.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<snmp-config
 xmlns="http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/snmp"
 port="161" retry="3" timeout="800" read-community="public"

 version="v1" max-vars-per-pdu="10">
<definition retry="1" timeout="2000"
 read-community="public" version="v2c">
<specific>10.12.23.32</specific>
</definition>

</snmp-config>
```

However, If an IP address is then configured that is within the range, the range will be split into two separate ranges and a specific entry is added. For example, if a configuration was added through the same UI for the IP: 10.12.23.32 having the community name *public*, then the resulting configuration will be:
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<snmp-config
xmlns="http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/snmp"
    port="161"
    retry="3"
    timeout="800"
    read-community="public"
    version="v1"
    max-vars-per-pdu="10">
    <definition retry="1" timeout="2000" read-community="YrusoNoz" version="v2c">
        <range begin="10.1.1.1" end="10.12.23.31/>
        <range begin="10.12.23.33" end="10.254.254.254"/>
    </definition>
    <definition retry="1" timeout="2000" read-community="public" version="v2c">
        <specific>10.12.23.32</specific>
    </definition>
</snmp-config>

the bold IP addresses show where the range was split and the specific with community name "public" was added.

Now, with SNMP configuration provisioned for our 10 network, we are ready to begin adding nodes. Our first example will be to automatically discovery and add all managed entities (nodes, IP interfaces, SNMP Interfaces, and Monitored IP based Services). We will then give an example of how to be more directed and deliberate about your discovery by using Provisioning Groups.

Automatically discovered entities are analyzed, persisted to the relational data store, and then managed based on the policies defined in the default foreign source definition. This is very similar to the way that entities were handled by Capsd by with finer grained sense of control.

6.3.2. Automatic Discovery

Currently in OpenNMS Horizon, the ICMP is used to automatically provision node entities into OpenNMS Horizon. This functionality has been in OpenNMS since is 1.0 release, however, in 1.8, a few of the use cases have been updated with Provisiond’s replacement of Capsd.

Separation of Concerns

Version 1.8 Provisiond separates what was called Capsd scanning in to 3 distinct phases: entity scanning, service detection, and node merging. These phases are now managed separately by Provisiond. Immediately following the import of a node entity, tasks are created for scanning a node to discover the node entity's interfaces (SNMP and IP). As interfaces are found, they are persisted and tasks are scheduled for service detection of each IP interface.

For auto discovered nodes, a node merging phase is scheduled; Nodes that have been directly provisioned will not be included in the node merging process. Merging will only occur when 2 automatically discovered nodes appear to be the same node.
6.3.3. Enhanced Directed Discovery

This new form of provisioning first appears in OpenNMS with version 1.8 and the new Provisiond service. It combines the benefits of the Importer's strictly controlled methodology of directed provisioning (from version 1.6) with OpenNMS' robustly flexible auto discovery. Enhanced Directed discovery begins with an enhanced version of the same import requisition used in directed provisioning and completes with a policy influenced persistence phase that sorts though the details of all the entities and services found during the entity and service scanning phase.

If you are planning to use this form of provisioning, it important to understand the conceptual details of how Provisiond manages entities it is directed to provision. This knowledge will enable administrators and systems integrators to better plan, implement, and resolve any issues involved with this provisioning strategy.

Understanding the Process

There are 3 phases involved with directing entities to be discovered: import, node scan, and service scan. The import phase also has sub phases: marshal, audit, limited SNMP scan, and re-parent.

Marshal and Audit Phases

It is important to understand that the nodes requisitioned from each foreign source are managed as a complete set. Nodes defined in a requisition from the foreign source CRM and CMDB, for example, will be managed separately from each other even if they should contain exactly the same node definitions. To OpenNMS Horizon, these are individual entities and they are managed as a set.

Requisitions are referenced via a URL. Currently, the URL can be specified as one of the following protocols: FILE, HTTP, HTTPS, and DNS. Each protocol has a protocol handler that is used to stream the XML from a foreign source, i.e. http://inv.corp.org/import.cgi?customer=acme or file:/opt/opennms/etc/imports/acme.xml. The DNS protocol is a special handler developed for Provisioning sets of nodes as a foreign-source from a corporate DNS server. See DNS Protocol Handler for details.

Upon the import request (either on schedule or on demand via an Event) the requisition is marshaled into Java objects for processing. The nodes defined in the requisition represent what OpenNMS Horizon should have as the current set of managed entities from that foreign source. The audit phase determines for each node defined (or not defined) in the requisition which are to be processed as an Add, Update, or Delete operation during the Import Phase. This determination is made by comparing the set foreign IDs of each node in the requisition set with the set of foreign IDs of currently managed entities in OpenNMS Horizon.

The intersection of the IDs from each set will become the Update operations, the extra set of foreign IDs that are in the requisition become the Add operations, and the extra set of foreign IDs from the managed entities become the Delete operations. This implies that the foreign IDs from each foreign source must be unique.
Naturally, the first time an import request is processed from a foreign source there will be zero (0) node entities from the set of nodes currently being managed and each node defined in the requisition will become an Add Operation. If a requisition is processed with zero (0) node definitions, all the currently managed nodes from that foreign source will become Delete operations (all the nodes, interfaces, outages, alarms, etc. will be removed from OpenNMS Horizon).

When nodes are provisioned using the Provisioning Groups Web-UI, the requisitions are stored on the local file system and the file protocol handler is used to reference the requisition. Each Provisioning Group is a separate foreign source and unique foreign IDs are generated by the Web-UI. An MSP might use Provisioning Groups to define the set of nodes to be managed by customer name where each customer’s set of nodes are maintained in a separate Provisioning Group.

**Import Phase**

The import phase begins when Provisiond receives a request to import a requisition from a URL. The first step in this phase is to load the requisition and marshal all the node entities defined in the requisition into Java objects.

If any syntactical or XML structural problems occur in the requisition, the entire import is abandoned and no import operations are completed.

Once the requisition is marshaled, the requisition nodes are audited against the persisted node entities. The set of requisitioned nodes are compared with a subset of persisted nodes and this subset is generated from a database query using the foreign source defined in the requisition. The audit generates one of three operations for each requisition node: insert, update, delete based on each requisitioned node’s foreign ID. Delete operations are created for any nodes that are not in the requisition but are in the DB subset, update operations are created for requisition nodes that match a persisted node from the subset (the intersection), and insert operations are created from the remaining requisition nodes (nodes in the requisition that are not in the DB subset).

If a requisition node has an interface defined as the Primary SNMP interface, then during the update and insert operations the node will be scanned for minimal SNMP attribute information. This scan find the required node and SNMP interface details required for complete SNMP support of the node and only the IP interfaces defined in the requisition.

this not the same as Provisiond SNMP discovery scan phases: node scan and interface scan.

**Node Scan Phase**

Where directed discovery leaves off and enhanced directed discovery begins is that after all the operations have completed, directed discovery is finished and enhanced directed discovery takes off. The requisitioned nodes are scheduled for node scans where details about the node are discovered and interfaces that were not directly provisioned are also discovered. All physical (SNMP) and logical (IP) interfaces are discovered and persisted based on any Provisioning Policies that may have been defined for the foreign source associated with the import requisition.

**Service Scan (detection) Phase**

Additionally, the new Provisiond enhanced directed discovery mechanism follows interface
discovery with service detection on each IP interface entity. This is very similar to the Capsd plugin scanning found in all former releases of OpenNMS except that the foreign source definition is used to define what services should be detected on these interfaces found for nodes in the import requisition.

6.4. Import Handlers

6.4.1. File Handler

6.4.2. HTTP Handler

6.4.3. DNS Handler

The new Provisioning service in OpenNMS Horizon is continuously improving and adapting to the needs of the community.

One of the most recent enhancements to the system is built upon the very flexible and extensible API of referencing an import requisition’s location via a URL. Most commonly, these URLs are files on the file system (i.e. file:/opt/opennms/etc/imports/<my-provisioning-group.xml>) as requisitions created by the Provisioning Groups UI. However, these same requisitions for adding, updating, and deleting nodes (based on the original model importer) can also come from URLs specifying the HTTP protocol: http://myinventory.server.org/nodes.cgi

Now, using Java’s extensible protocol handling specification, a new protocol handler was created so that a URL can be specified for requesting a Zone Transfer (AXFR) request from a DNS server. The A records are recorded and used to build an import requisition. This is handy for organizations that use DNS (possibly coupled with an IP management tool) as the data base of record for nodes in the network. So, rather than ping sweeping the network or entering the nodes manually into OpenNMS Horizon Provisioning UI, nodes can be managed via 1 or more DNS servers.

The format of the URL for this new protocol handler is: dns://<host>[:port]/<zone>[/<foreign-source>/][?expression=<regex>]

DNS Import Examples:

Simple

dns://my-dns-server/myzone.com

This URL will import all A records from the host my-dns-server on port 53 (default port) from zone "myzone.com" and since the foreign source (a.k.a. the provisioning group) is not specified it will default to the specified zone.

Using a Regular Expression Filter

dns://my-dns-server/myzone.com/portland/?expression=^por-.*

This URL will import all nodes from the same server and zone but will only manage the nodes in
the zone matching the regular expression `^port-.*` and will and they will be assigned a unique foreign source (provisioning group) for managing these nodes as a subset of nodes from within the specified zone.

If your expression requires URL encoding (for example you need to use a `?` in the expression) it must be properly encoded.

```
dns://my-dns-server/myzone.com/portland/?expression=^por[0-9]%3F
```

**DNS Setup**

Currently, the DNS server requires to be setup to allow a zone transfer from the OpenNMS Horizon server. It is recommended that a secondary DNS server is running on OpenNMS Horizon and that the OpenNMS Horizon server be allowed to request a zone transfer. A quick way to test if zone transfers are working is:

```
dig -t AXFR @<dnsServer> <zone>
```

**Configuration**

The configuration of the Provisioning system has moved from a properties file (`model-importer.properties`) to an XML based configuration container. The configuration is now extensible to allow the definition of 0 or more import requisitions each with their own cron based schedule for automatic importing from various sources (intended for integration with external URL such as http and this new dns protocol handler.

A default configuration is provided in the OpenNMS Horizon `etc/` directory and is called: `provisiond-configuration.xml`. This default configuration has an example for scheduling an import from a DNS server running on the localhost requesting nodes from the zone, localhost and will be imported once per day at the stroke of midnight. Not very practical but is a good example.
<xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"/>
<provisiond-configuration xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns:opennms="http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/provisiond-configuration"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
foreign-source-dir="/opt/opennms/etc/foreign-sources"
requisition-dir="/opt/opennms/etc/imports"
importThreads="8"
scanThreads="10"
rescanThreads="10"
writeThreads="8"/>

<!-- http://www.quartz-scheduler.org/documentation/quartz-1.x/tutorials/crontrigger
Field Name Allowed Values Allowed Special Characters
Seconds 0-59 , - * / Minutes 0-59 , - * / Hours 0-23 , - * /
Day-of-month1-31, - * ? / L W C Month1-12 or JAN-DEC, - * /
Day-of-Week1-7 or SUN-SAT, - * ? / L C # Year (Opt)empty, 1970-2099, - * / -->

<requisition-def import-name="localhost"
import-url-resource="dns://localhost/localhost">
  <cron-schedule>0 0 0 * * ? *</cron-schedule>
</requisition-def>
</provisiond-configuration>

**Configuration Reload**

Like many of the daemon configuration in the 1.7 branch, the configurations are reloadable without having to restart OpenNMS Horizon, using the reloadDaemonConfig uei:

```
/opt/opennms/bin/send-event.pl
uei.opennms.org/internal/reloadDaemonConfig --parm 'daemonName Provisiond'
```

This means that you don't have to restart OpenNMS Horizon every time you update the configuration.

## 6.5. Provisioning Examples

Here are a few practical examples of enhanced directed discovery to help with your understanding of this feature.

### 6.5.1. Basic Provisioning

This example adds three nodes and requires no OpenNMS Horizon configuration other than specifying the node entities to be provisioned and managed in OpenNMS Horizon.

**Defining the Nodes via the Web-UI**

Using the Provisioning Groups Web-UI, three nodes are created given a single IP address. Navigate
to the Admin Menu and click Provisioning Groups Menu from the list of Admin options and create the group Bronze.

Creating a new Provisioning Group

Clicking the Add New Group button will create the group and will redisplay the page including this new group among the list of any group(s) that have already been created.

At this point, the XML structure for holding the new provisioning group (a.k.a. an import requisition) has been persisted to the ‘$OPENNMS_ETC/imports/pending’ directory.

Clicking the Edit link will bring you to the screen where you can begin the process of defining node entities that will be imported into OpenNMS Horizon. Click the Add Node button will begin the node entity creation process fill in the node label and click the Save button.

Creating a new Node definition in the Provisioning Group
At this point, the provisioning group contains the basic structure of a node entity but it is not complete until the interface(s) and interface service(s) have been defined. After having clicked the Save button, as we did above presents, in the Web-UI, the options Add Interface, Add Node Category, and Add Node Asset. Click the Add Interface link to add an interface entity to the node.

Adding an Interface to the node definition

![Interface configuration](image)

Enter the IP address for this interface entity, a description, and specify the Primary attribute as P (Primary), S (Secondary), N (Not collected), or C (Collected) and click the save button. Now the node entity has an interface for which services can be defined for which the Web-UI now presents the Add Service link. Add two services (ICMP, SNMP) via this link.

A complete node definition with all required elements defined.

![Node definition](image)

Now the node entity definition contains all the required elements necessary for importing this requisition into OpenNMS Horizon. At this point, all the interfaces that are required for the node
should be added. For example, NAT interfaces should be specified there are services that they provide because they will not be discovered during the Scan Phase.

Two more node definitions will be added for the benefit of this example.

The completed requisition for the example Bronze Provisioning Group

This set of nodes represents an import requisition for the Bronze provisioning group. As this requisition is being edited via the WebUI, changes are being persisted into the OpenNMS Horizon configuration directory '$OPENNMS_etc/imports/' pending as an XML file having the name `bronze.xml'.

The name of the XML file containing the import requisition is the same as the provisioning group name. Therefore naming your provisioning group without the use of spaces makes them easier to manage on the file system.
Click the *Done* button to return to the *Provisioning Groups* list screen. The details of the “Bronze” group now indicates that there are 3 nodes in the requisition and that there are no nodes in the DB from this group (a.k.a. foreign source). Additionally, you can see that time the requisition was last modified and the time it last imported are given (the time stamps are stored as attributes inside the requisition and are not the file system time stamps). These details are indicative of how well the DB represents what is in the requisition.

You can tell that this is a pending requisition for 2 reasons: 1) there are 3 nodes defined and 0 nodes in the DB, 2) the requisition has been modified since the last import (in this case *never*).

**Import the Nodes**

In this example, you see that there are 3 nodes in the pending requisition and 0 in the DB. Click the *Import* button to submit the requisition to the provisioning system (what actually happens is that the Web-UI sends an event to the Provisioner telling it to begin the Import Phase for this group).

Do not refresh this page to check the values of these details. To refresh the details to verify the import, click the *Provisioning Groups* bread crumb item.

You should be able to immediately verify the importation of this provisioning group because the import happens very quickly. Provisiond has several threads ready for processing the import.
operations of the nodes defined in this requisition.

A few SNMP packets are sent and received to get the SNMP details of the node and the interfaces defined in the requisition. Upon receipt of these packets (or not) each node is inserted as a DB transaction.

The nodes are now added to OpenNMS Horizon and are under management.

Following the import of a node with thousands of interfaces, you will be able to refresh the Interface table browser on the Node page and see that interfaces and services are being discovered and added in the background. This is the discovery component of directed discovery.

Adding a Node

To direct that another node be added from a foreign source (in this example the Bronze Provisioning Group) simply add a new node definition and re-import. It is important to remember that all the node definitions will be re-imported and the existing managed nodes will be updated, if necessary.

Changing a Node

To direct changes to an existing node, simply add, change, or delete elements or attributes of the node definition and re-import. This is a great feature of having directed specific elements of a node in the requisition because that attributes will simply be changed. For example, to change the IP address of the Primary SNMP interface for the node, barbrady.opennms.org, just change the requisition and re-import.

Each element in the Web-UI has an associated Edit icon Click this icon to change the IP address for barbrady.opennms.org, click save, and then Click the Done button.

Changing the IP address of barbrady.opennms.org from 10.1.1.2 to 192.168.1.1
The Web-UI will return you to the *Provisioning Groups* screen where you will see that there are the time stamp showing that the requisition’s last modification is more recent that the last import time.

*The Provisioning Group must be re-imported*

This provides an indication that the group must be re-imported for the changes made to the requisition to take effect. The IP Interface will be simply updated and all the required events (messages) will be sent to communicate this change within OpenNMS Horizon.

*The IP interface for barbrady.opennms.org is immediately updated*

**Deleting a Node**

*Barbrady* has not been behaving, as one might expect, so it is time to remove him from the system. Edit the provisioning group, click the delete button next to the node *barbrady.opennms.org*, click the *Done* button.

*Bronze Provisioning Group definition indicates a node has been removed and requires an import to delete the node entity from the OpenNMS Horizon system*

Click the Import button for the Bronze group and the Barbrady node and its interfaces, services, and any other related data will be immediately deleted from the OpenNMS Horizon system. All the required Events (messages) will be sent by Provisiond to provide indication to the OpenNMS Horizon system that the node Barbrady has been deleted.
Deleting all the Nodes

There is a convenient way to delete all the nodes that have been provided from a specific foreign source. From the main Admin/Provisioning Groups screen in the Web-UI, click the Delete Nodes button. This button deletes all the nodes defined in the Bronze requisition. It is very important to note that once this is done, it cannot be undone! Well it can't be undone from the Web-UI and can only be undone if you've been good about keeping a backup copy of your '$OPENMS_ETC/' directory tree. If you've made a mistake, before you re-import the requisition, restore the Bronze.xml requisition from your backup copy to the '$OPENNMS_ETC/imports' directory.

All node definitions have been removed from the Bronze requisition. The Web-UI indicates an import is now required to remove them from OpenNMS Horizon.

Clicking the Import button will cause the Audit Phase of Provisiond to determine that all the nodes from the Bronze group (foreign source) should be deleted from the DB and will create Delete operations. At this point, if you are satisfied that the nodes have been deleted and that you will no longer require nodes to be defined in this Group, you will see that the Delete Nodes button has now changed to the Delete Group button. The Delete Group button is displayed when there are no nodes entities from that group (foreign source) in OpenNMS Horizon.

When no node entities from the group exist in OpenNMS Horizon, then the Delete Group button is displayed.

6.5.2. Advanced Provisioning Example

In the previous example, we provisioned 3 nodes and let Provisiond complete all of its import phases using a default foreign source definition. Each Provisioning Group can have a separate foreign source definition that controls:

- The rescan interval
- The services to be detected
- The policies to be applied
This example will demonstrate how to create a foreign source definition and how it is used to control the behavior of Provisiond when importing a Provisioning Group/foreign source requisition.

First let’s simply provision the node and let the default foreign source definition apply.

The node definition used for the Advanced Provisioning Example

Following the import, All the IP and SNMP interfaces, in addition to the interface specified in the requisition, have been discovered and added to the node entity. The default foreign source definition has no polices for controlling which interfaces that are discovered either get persisted or managed by OpenNMS Horizon.
Logical and Physical interface and Service entities directed and discovered by Provisiond.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ind</th>
<th>SNMP IFDescr</th>
<th>SNMP IFName</th>
<th>SNMP IFIndex</th>
<th>SNMP IFAdminStatus</th>
<th>IP Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>vmnet8</td>
<td>vmnet8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>192.168.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>vmnet1</td>
<td>vmnet1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>192.168.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>lo0</td>
<td>lo0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>192.168.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>en2</td>
<td>en2</td>
<td>100000000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>en1</td>
<td>en1</td>
<td>100000000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>fw0</td>
<td>fw0</td>
<td>100000000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>en0</td>
<td>en0</td>
<td>100000000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>stf0</td>
<td>stf0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>gif0</td>
<td>gif0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Service Detection

As IP interfaces are found during the node scan process, service detection tasks are scheduled for each IP interface. The service detections defined in the foreign source determines which services are to be detected and how (i.e. the values of the parameters that parameters control how the service is detected, port, timeout, etc.).

Applying a New Foreign Source Definition

This example node has been provisioned using the Default foreign source definition. By navigating to the Provisioning Groups screen in the OpenNMS Horizon Web-UI and clicking the Edit Foreign Source link of a group, you can create a new foreign source definition that defines service detection and policies. The policies determine entity persistence and/or set attributes on the discovered entities that control OpenNMS Horizon management behaviors.

*When creating a new foreign source definition, the default definition is used as a template.*
In this UI, new Detectors can be added, changed, and removed. For this example, we will remove detection of all services accept ICMP and DNS, change the timeout of ICMP detection, and a new
Service detection for OpenNMS Horizon Web-UI.

Custom foreign source definition created for NMS Provisioning Group (foreign source).

Click the Done button and re-import the NMS Provisioning Group. During this and any subsequent re-imports or re-scans, the OpenNMS Horizon detector will be active, and the detectors that have been removed will no longer test for the related services for the interfaces on nodes managed in the provisioning group (requisition), however, the currently detected services will not be removed. There are 2 ways to delete the previously detected services:

1. Delete the node in the provisioning group, re-import, define it again, and finally re-import again
2. Use the ReST API to delete unwanted services. Use this command to remove each unwanted service from each interface, iteratively:

```bash
```
There is a sneaky way to do #1. Edit the provisioning group and just change the foreign ID. That will make Provisiond think that a node was deleted and a new node was added in the same requisition! Use this hint with caution and an full understanding of the impact of deleting an existing node.

Provisioning with Policies

The Policy API in Provisiond allow you to control the persistence of discovered IP and SNMP Interface entities and Node Categories during the Scan phase.

Matching IP Interface Policy

The Matching IP Interface policy controls whether discovered interfaces are to be persisted and if they are to be persisted, whether or not they will be forced to be Managed or Unmanaged.

Continuing with this example Provisioning Group, we are going to define a few policies that:

a. Prevent discovered 10 network addresses from being persisted
b. Force 192.168 network addresses to be unmanaged

From the foreign source definition screen, click the Add Policy button and you the definition of a new policy will begin with a field for naming the policy and a drop down list of the currently installed policies. Name the policy no10s, make sure that the Match IP Interface policy is specified in the class list and click the Save button. This action will automatically add all the parameters required for the policy.

The two required parameters for this policy are action and matchBehavior.

*The action parameter can be set to DO_NOT_PERSIST, Manage, or UnManage.*

Creating a policy to prevent persistence of 10 network IP interfaces.

The DO_NOT_PERSIST action does just what it indicates, it prevents discovered IP interface entities from being added to OpenNMS Horizon when the matchBehavior is satisfied. The Manage and UnManage values for this action allow the IP interface entity to be persisted by control whether or not that interface should be managed by OpenNMS Horizon.

The matchBehavior action is a boolean control that determines how the optional parameters will
be evaluated. Setting this parameter's value to `ALL_PARAMETERS` causes `Provisiond` to evaluate each optional parameter with boolean `AND` logic and the value `ANY_PARAMETERS` will cause `OR` logic to be applied.

Now we will add one of the optional parameters to filter the 10 network addresses. The Matching IP Interface policy supports two additional parameters, `hostName` and `ipAddress`. Click the `Add Parameter` link and choose `ipAddress` as the key. The value for either of the optional parameters can be an exact or regular expression match. As in most configurations in OpenNMS Horizon where regular expression matching can be optionally applied, prefix the value with the `~` character.

*Example Matching IP Interface Policy to not Persist 10 Network addresses*

Any subsequent scan of the node or re-imports of NMS provisioning group will force this policy to be applied. IP Interface entities that already exist that match this policy will not be deleted. Existing interfaces can be deleted by recreating the node in the `Provisioning Groups` screen (simply change the foreign ID and re-import the group) or by using the ReST API:

```
```

The next step in this example is to define a policy that sets discovered 192.168 network addresses to be unmanaged (not managed) in OpenNMS Horizon. Again, click the Add Policy button and let's call this policy `noMgt192168s`. Again, choose the Matching IP Interface policy and this time set the action to `UNMANAGE`.

*Policy to not manage IP interfaces from 192.168 networks*
The UNMANAGE behavior will be applied to existing interfaces.

Matching SNMP Interface Policy

Like the Matching IP Interface Policy, this policy controls the whether discovered SNMP interface entities are to be persisted and whether or not OpenNMS Horizon should collect performance metrics from the SNMP agent for Interface’s index (MIB2 IfIndex).

In this example, we are going to create a policy that doesn’t persist interfaces that are AAL5 over ATM or type 49 (ifType). Following the same steps as when creating an IP Management Policy, edit the foreign source definition and create a new policy. Let’s call it: noAAL5s. We’ll use Match SNMP Interface class for each policy and add a parameter with ifType as the key and 49 as the value.

Matching SNMP Interface Policy example for Persistence and Data Collection
At the appropriate time during the scanning phase, Provisiond will evaluate the policies in the foreign source definition and take appropriate action. If during the policy evaluation process any policy matches for a “DO_NOT_PERSIST” action, no further policy evaluations will happen for that particular entity (IP Interface, SNMP Interface).

**Node Categorization Policy**

With this policy, nodes entities will automatically be assigned categories. The policy is defined in the same manner as the IP and SNMP interface polices. Click the Add Policy button and give the policy name, cisco and choose the Set Node Category class. Edit the required category key and set the value to Cisco. Add a policy parameter and choose the sysObjectId key with a value ~^\1\.3\1\.6\1\.4\1\.1\.9\..*.

**Example: Node Category setting policy**
New Import Capabilities

Several new XML entities have been added to the import requisition since the introduction of the OpenNMS Importer service in version 1.6. So, in addition to provisioning the basic node, interface, service, and node categories, you can now also provision asset data.

Provisioning Configuration

The configuration of the Provisioning system has moved from a properties file (model-importer.properties) to an XML based configuration container. The configuration is now extensible to allow the definition of 0 or more import requisitions each with their own Cron based schedule for automatic importing from various sources (intended for integration with external URL such as HTTP and this new DNS protocol handler.

A default configuration is provided in the OpenNMS Horizon etc/ directory and is called: provisiond-configuration.xml. This default configuration has an example for scheduling an import from a DNS server running on the localhost requesting nodes from the zone, localhost and will be imported once per day at the stroke of midnight. Not very practical but is a good example.
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<provisiond-configuration
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/provisiond-configuration"

foreign-source-dir="/opt/opennms/etc/foreign-sources"
requistion-dir="/opt/opennms/etc/imports"
importThreads="8"
scanThreads="10"
rescanThreads="10"
writeThreads="8" />

<!--
http://www.quartz-scheduler.org/documentation/quartz-1.x/tutorials/crontrigger
Field Name Allowed Values Allowed Special Characters
Seconds 0-59 , - * / Minutes 0-59 , - * / Hours 0-23 , - * /
Day-of-month1-31, - * ? / L W C Month1-12 or JAN-DEC, - * /
Day-of-Week1-7 or SUN-SAT, - * ? / L C # Year (Opt)empty, 1970-2099, - * /
-->

<requisition-def import-name="NMS"
import-url-resource="file://opt/opennms/etc/imports/NMS.xml">

<cron-schedule>0 0 0 * * ? *</cron-schedule> <!-- daily, at midnight -->
</requisition-def>
</provisiond-configuration>

Configuration Reload

Like many of the daemon configurations in the 1.7 branch, Provisiond's configuration is re-loadable without having to restart OpenNMS. Use the reloadDaemonConfig uei:

```
/opt/opennms/bin/send-event.pl uei.opennms.org/internal/reloadDaemonConfig --parm 'daemonName Provisiond'
```

This means that you don't have to restart OpenNMS Horizon every time you update the configuration!

Provisioning Asset Data

The Provisioning Groups Web-UI had been updated to expose the ability to add Node Asset data in an import requisition. Click the Add Node Asset link and you can select from a drop down list all the possible node asset attributes that can be defined.
After an import, you can navigate to the Node Page and click the Asset Info link and see the asset data that was just provided in the requisition.
External Requisition Sources

Because Provisiond takes a URL as the location service for import requisitions, OpenNMS Horizon can be easily extended to support sources in addition to the native URL handling provided by Java: file://, http://, and https://. When you configure Provisiond to import requisitions on a schedule you specify using a URL Resource. For requisitions created by the Provisioning Groups WebUI, you can specify a file based URL.

Provisioning Nodes from DNS

The new Provisioning service in OpenNMS Horizon is continuously improving and adapting to the needs of the community. One of the most recent enhancements to the system is built upon the very flexible and extensible API of referencing an import requisition’s location via a URL. Most commonly, these URLs are files on the file system (i.e. file://opt/opennms/etc/imports/<my-provisioning-group.xml>) as requisitions created by the Provisioning Groups UI. However, these same requisitions for adding, updating, and deleting nodes (based on the original model importer) can also come from URLs specifying the HTTP protocol: http://myinventory.server.org/nodes.cgi

Now, using Java’s extensible protocol handling specification, a new protocol handler was created so
that a URL can be specified for requesting a Zone Transfer (AXFR) request from a DNS server. The A records are recorded and used to build an import requisition. This is handy for organizations that use DNS (possibly coupled with an IP management tool) as the data base of record for nodes in the network. So, rather than ping sweeping the network or entering the nodes manually into OpenNMS Horizon Provisioning UI, nodes can be managed via 1 or more DNS servers. The format of the URL for this new protocol handler is:

```
dns://<host>[:port]<zone>[:<foreign-source>][?expression=<regex>]
```

**Simple Example**

```
dns://my-dns-server/myzone.com
```

This will import all A records from the host my-dns-server on port 53 (default port) from zone myzone.com and since the foreign source (a.k.a. the provisioning group) is not specified it will default to the specified zone.

**Using a Regular Expression Filter**

You can also specify a subset of the A records from the zone transfer using a regular expression:

```
dns://my-dns-server/myzone.com/portland/?expression=^port-.*
```

This will import all nodes from the same server and zone but will only manage the nodes in the zone matching the regular expression ^port-.* and will and they will be assigned a unique foreign source (provisioning group) for managing these nodes as a subset of nodes from within the specified zone.

**URL Encoding**

If your expression requires URL encoding (for example you need to use a ? in the expression) it must be properly encoded.

```
dns://my-dns-server/myzone.com/portland/?expression=^por[0-9]%3F
```

**DNS Setup**

Currently, the DNS server requires to be setup to allow a zone transfer from the OpenNMS Horizon server. It is recommended that a secondary DNS server is running on OpenNMS Horizon and that the OpenNMS Horizon server be allowed to request a zone transfer. A quick way to test if zone transfers are working is:

```
dig -t AXFR @<dn5Server> <zone>
```
6.6. Adapters

The OpenNMS Horizon Provisiond API also supports Provisioning Adapters (plugins) for integration with external systems during the provisioning Import phase. When node entities are added, updated, deleted, or receive a configuration management change event, OpenNMS Horizon will call the adapter for the provisioning activities with integrated systems.

Currently, OpenNMS Horizon supports the following adapters:

6.6.1. DDNS Adapter

The Opposite end of Provisiond integration from the DNS Requisition Import, is the DDNS adapter. This adapter uses the dynamic DNS protocol to update a DNS system as nodes are provisioned into OpenNMS Horizon. To configure this adapter, edit the opennms.properties file and set the importer.adapter.dns.server property:

```
importer.adapter.dns.server=192.168.1.1
```

6.6.2. RANCID Adapter

Integration has been integrated with RANCID though this new API.

- <More documentation needed>
- Maps (soon to be moved to Mapd) <documentation required>
- WiMax-Link (soon to be moved to Linkd) <documentation required>

6.7. Integrating with Provisiond

The ReST API should be used for integration from other provisioning systems with OpenNMS Horizon. The ReST API provides an interface for defining foreign sources and requisitions.

6.7.1. Provisioning Groups of Nodes

Just as with the WebUI, groups of nodes can be managed via the ReST API from an external system. The steps are:

1. Create a Foreign Source (if not using the default) for the group
2. Update the SNMP configuration for each node in the group
3. Create/Update the group of nodes

6.7.2. Example
Step 1 - Create a Foreign Source

If policies for this group of nodes are going to be specified differently than the default policy, then a foreign source should be created for the group. Using the ReST API, a foreign source can be provided. Here is an example:

The XML can be imbedded in the `curl` command option `-d` or be referenced from a file if the `@` prefix is used with the file name as in this case.

The XML file: `customer-a.foreign-source.xml`:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<foreign-source date-stamp="2009-10-12T17:26:11.616-04:00" name="customer-a" xmlns="http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/foreign-source">
  <scan-interval>1d</scan-interval>
  <detectors>
    <detector class="org.opennms.netmgt.provision.detector.icmp.IcmpDetector" name="ICMP"/>
    <detector class="org.opennms.netmgt.provision.detector.snmp.SnmpDetector" name="SNMP"/>
  </detectors>
  <policies>
    <policy class="org.opennms.netmgt.provision.persist.policies.MatchingIpInterfacePolicy" name="no-192-168">
      <parameter value="UNMANAGE" key="action"/>
      <parameter value="ALL_PARAMETERS" key="matchBehavior"/>
      <parameter value="~^192\.168\..*" key="ipAddress"/>
    </policy>
  </policies>
</foreign-source>
```

Here is an example `curl` command used to create the foreign source with the above foreign source specification above:

```
```

Now that you've created the foreign source, it needs to be deployed by Provisiond. Here an the example using the `curl` command to deploy the foreign source:

```
curl -v -u admin:admin
http://localhost:8980/opennms/rest/foreignSources/pending/customer-a/deploy -X PUT
```

The current API doesn't strictly follow the ReST design guidelines and will be updated in a later release.
Step 2 - Update the SNMP configuration

The implementation only supports a PUT request because it is an implied "Update" of the configuration since it requires an IP address and all IPs have a default configuration. This request is passed to the SNMP configuration factory in OpenNMS Horizon for optimization of the configuration store snmp-config.xml. This example changes the community string for the IP address 10.1.1.1 to yRuSonoZ.

**Community string is the only required element**

```
curl -v -X PUT -H "Content-Type: application/xml" -H "Accept: application/xml" -d 
<snmp-info><community>yRuSonoZ</community><port>161</port><retries>1</retries><timeout>2000</timeout><version>v2c</version></snmp-info>" -u admin:admin
http://localhost:8980/opennms/rest/snmpConfig/10.1.1.1
```

Step 3 - Create/Update the Requisition

This example adds 2 nodes to the Provisioning Group, customer-a. Note that the foreign-source attribute typically has a 1 to 1 relationship to the name of the Provisioning Group requisition. There is a direct relationship between the foreign-source attribute in the requisition and the foreign source policy specification. Also, typically, the name of the provisioning group will also be the same. In the following example, the ReST API will automatically create a provisioning group based on the value foreign-source attribute specified in the XML requisition.

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/xml" -d "<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<model-import xmlns="http://xmlns.opennms.org/xsd/config/model-import" date-stamp="2009-03-07T17:56:53.123-05:00" last-import="2009-03-07T17:56:53.117-05:00"
foreigne-source="customer-a">
<node node-label="p-brane" foreign-id="1"
<interface ip-addr="10.0.1.3" descr="en1" status="1" snmp-primary="P">
<monitored-service service-name="ICMP"/>
<monitored-service service-name="SNMP"/>
</interface>
<category name="Production"/>
<category name="Routers"/>
</node>
<node node-label="m-brane" foreign-id="1"
<interface ip-addr="10.0.1.4" descr="en1" status="1" snmp-primary="P">
<monitored-service service-name="ICMP"/>
<monitored-service service-name="SNMP"/>
</interface>
<category name="Production"/>
<category name="Routers"/>
</node>
</model-import>" -u admin:admin
http://localhost:8980/opennms/rest/requisitions
```

A provisioning group file called etc/imports/customer-a.xml will be found on the OpenNMS Horizon system following the successful completion of this curl command and will also be visible via the WebUI.

**Add, Update, Delete operations are handled via the ReST API in the same manner as described in detailed specification.**
6.8. Provisioning Single Nodes (Quick Add Node)

Adding a Node to a Current Requisition

Often, it is requested that a single node add/update be completed for an already defined provisioning group. There is a ReST API for the Add Node implementation found in the OpenNMS Horizon Web-UI. For this to work, the provisioning group must already exist in the system even if there are no nodes defined in the group.

1. Create a foreign source (if required)
2. Specify SNMP configuration
3. Provide a single node with the following specification

6.9. Fine Grained Provisioning Using provision.pl

provision.pl provides an example command-line interface to the provisioning-related OpenNMS Horizon REST API endpoints.

The script has many options but the first 3 optional parameters are described here:

You can use --help to the script to see all the available options.

```
--username (default: admin)
--password (default: admin)
--url (default: http://localhost:8980/opennms/rest)
```

6.9.1. Create a new requisition

provision.pl provides easy access to the requisition REST service using the requisition option:

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl requisition customer1
```

This command will create a new, empty (containing no nodes) requisition in OpenNMS Horizon.

The new requisition starts life in the pending state. This allows you to iteratively build the requisition and then later actually import the nodes in the requisition into OpenNMS Horizon. This handles all adds/changes/deletes at once. So, you could be making changes all day and then at night either have a schedule in OpenNMS Horizon that imports the group automatically or you can send a command through the REST service from an outside system to have the pending requisition imported/reimported.

You can get a list of all existing requisitions with the list option of the provision.pl script:

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl list
```
Create a new Node

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl node add customer1 1 node-a
```

This command creates a node element in the requisition `customer1` called `node-a` using the script's `node` option. The node's foreign-ID is 1 but it can be any alphanumeric value as long as it is unique within the requisition. Note the node has no interfaces or services yet.

Add an Interface Element to that Node

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl interface add customer1 1 127.0.0.1
```

This command adds an interface element to the node element using the `interface` option to the `provision.pl` command and it can now be seen in the pending requisition by running `provision.pl requisition list customer1`.

Add a Couple of Services to that Interface

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl service add customer1 1 127.0.0.1 ICMP
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl service add customer1 1 127.0.0.1 SNMP
```

This adds the 2 services to the specified 127.0.0.1 interface and is now in the pending requisition.

Set the Primary SNMP Interface

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl interface set customer1 1 127.0.0.1 snmp-primary P
```

This sets the 127.0.0.1 interface to be the node’s Primary SNMP interface.

Add a couple of Node Categories

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl category add customer1 1 Routers
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl category add customer1 1 Production
```

This adds the two categories to the node and is now in the pending requisition.

These categories are case-sensitive but do not have to be already defined in OpenNMS Horizon. They will be created on the fly during the import if they do not already exist.

Setting Asset Fields on a Node

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl asset add customer1 1 serialnumber 9999
```

This will add value of 9999 to the field: `serialnumber`. 
Deploy the Import Requisition (Creating the Group)

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl requisition import customer1
```

This will cause OpenNMS Horizon Provisiond to import the pending `customer1` requisition. The formerly pending requisition will move into the deployed state inside OpenNMS Horizon.

Deleting a Node from a Requisition

Very much the same as the add, except that a single delete command and a re-import is required. What happens is that the audit phase is run by Provisiond and it will be determined that a node has been removed from the requisition and the node will be deleted from the DB and all services will stop activities related to it.

```
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl node delete customer1 1 node-a
${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin/provision.pl requisition import customer1
```

This completes the life cycle of managing a node element, iteratively, in a import requisition.

6.10. Yet Other API Examples

List the Nodes in a Provisioning Group

The `provision.pl` script doesn't supply this feature but you can get it via the REST API. Here is an example using `curl`:

```bash
#!/bin/bash
REQ=$1
curl -X GET -H "Content-Type: application/xml" -u admin:admin http://localhost:8980/opennms/rest/requisitions/$REQ 2>/dev/null | xmllint --format -
```

6.11. Service Detectors

6.11.1. SNMP Detector

This detector is used to find and assigns services based on SNMP. The detector binds a service with a given Service Name when a particular SNMP OID as scalar or table matches a given criteria.

Detector facts

| Implementation | org.opennms.netmgmt.provision.detector.snmp.SnmpDetector |

Configuration and Usage

Table 66. Parameters for the SNMP detector
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Default value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>SNMP OID for scalar or table to detect the service.</td>
<td>required</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.1.2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retry</td>
<td>Number of retries to detect the service.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>agent config</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Timeout in milliseconds to wait for a response from the SNMP agent.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>agent config</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vbvalue</td>
<td>expected return value to detect the service; if not specified the service</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is detected if the SNMP OID returned any kind of valid value. The vbvalue</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is evaluated as Java Regular Expression.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hex</td>
<td>Set true if the data is from type HEX-String.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isTable</td>
<td>Set true if detector should evaluate SNMP tables.</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matchType</td>
<td>Set match type to evaluate the expected value in the SNMP table. EXIST:</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>EXIST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the expected vbvalue is ignored, service detected if the given table</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>under OID exist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL: all values in the table must match against expected vbvalue to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>detect service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANY: at least one value in the table must match against expected vbvalue</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to detect service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NONE: None of the values should match against expected value to detect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example for SNMP scalar value**

We have *Dell* server farm and want to monitor the global server status provided by the OpenManage Server Administrator. Global status is provided by a scalar OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10892.1.200.10.1.2.1. The service should be automatically detected if the server supports this OID.

For provisioning we have a requisition named *Server* which contains all server of our data center. A Detector with the name *Dell-OMSA-Global-State* for this requisition is created with the following parameter:

*Table 67. Parameters for the SNMP detector*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Dell-OMSA-Global-State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.674.10892.1.200.10.1.2.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the requisition *Server* is synchronized the service *Dell-OMSA-Global-State* will be detected in case they support the given SNMP OID.
Example using SNMP tables

We have a HP server farm and want to monitor the status of logical drives over SNMP provided from HP Insight Manager. The status for logical drives is provided in a SNMP Table under .1.3.6.1.4.1.232.3.2.3.1.1.4. The service should be automatically assigned to all servers exposing the given SNMP OID.

For provisioning we have a requisition named Server which contains all server of our data center. A Detector with the name HP-Insight-Drive-Logical for this requisition is created with the following parameter:

Table 68. Parameters for the SNMP detector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>HP-Insight-Drive-Logical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.232.3.2.3.1.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isTable</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the requisition Server is synchronized the service HP-Insight-Drive-Logical will be detected in case they support the given SNMP OID table.
Chapter 7. Business Service Monitoring

This section describes how to model and configure Business Services (BS) and orchestrate them in a hierarchy. The concepts and usage of the section Business Service Monitoring from the User Guide is presumed.

Business Service Monitoring (BSM) includes the following components:

- **Business Service Monitoring Daemon (BSMD):** Maintains and drives the state of all BS
- **Business Service Editor:** Web application which allows you to create, update or delete BS
- **Topology View for Business Services:** Visual representation of the Business Service Hierarchy as a component of the Topology User Interface.
- **BSM ReST API:** ReST based API to create, read, update or delete BS

7.1. Business Service Definition

The status of Service Monitors and any kind of Alarm can be used to drive the Operational Status of a BS. A BS is defined with the following components:

- **Business Service Name:** A unique name used to identify the BS
- **Edges:** A set of elements on which this BS relies which can include other BS, or Reduction Keys.
- **Reduce Function:** Function used to aggregate the Operational Status from all the Edges. Specific functions may take additional parameters.
- **Attributes:** Optional key/value pairs that can be used to tag or enrich the Business Service with additional information.

Each Business Service can contain a list of optional key/value attributes. These can be used to identify or tag the BS, and may be reference in other workflows. These attributes do not affect the dependencies or the status calculation of the BS.

💡 Attributes can be used to filter BS in Ops Board dashlets.

The Business Service Editor is used to manage and model the Business Services and their hierarchy. It is required to have administrative permissions and is available in "Login Name → Configure OpenNMS → Manage Business Services" in the Service Monitoring section.

Managing Business Services with the Business Service Editor
1. Create a new Business Service definition
2. Collapse tree view for all Business Services in the view
3. Expand tree view for all Business Services in the view
4. Reload all Business Services in the view with current Business Services from the system
5. Reload the Business Service Monitoring Daemon to use the Business Service definition as configured
6. Business Service dependency hierarchy as tree view
7. Show the current Business Service with dependencies in the Topology UI
8. Edit and delete existing Business Service definitions

As shown in figure Managing Business Services with the Business Service Editor the Business Services can created or changed. The hierarchy is created by assigning an existing Business Service as Child Service.

7.2. Edges

Edges map the Alarm status monitoring with OpenNMS

The following types can be used:

- **Child Service**: A reference to an existing Business Service on which to depend
- **IP Service**: A convenient way to refer to the alarms that can be generated by a monitored IP Service. This will automatically provided edges for the nodeLostService, interfaceDown and nodeDown reductions keys of the specified service.
- **Reduction Key**: A resolved Reduction Key used to refer to a specific Alarm, e.g. generated by a SNMP Trap or Threshold violation

If you need help determining the reduction key used by alarm, trigger the alarm in question and pull the reduction key from the Alarm details page.

All edge types have the following parameters:

- **Map Function**: The associated Map Function for this Edge
- **Weight**: The relative Weight of this edge. Used by certain Reduce Functions.

Both IP Service and Reduction Key type edges also support a Friendly Name parameter which gives the user control on how the edge is labeled in the Topology User Interface. The editor changing the Edge attributes is shown in figure Editor to add Business Service Edges.

Editor to add Business Service Edges
7.2.1. Child Services

To create a hierarchy of Business Services they need to be created first. The hierarchy is built by selecting the Business Service as Child Service as dependency.

7.2.2. IP Services

The IP Service is a predefined set of Reduction Keys which allows easily to assign a specific Monitored Service to the given BS. As an example you have multiple Servers with a Monitored Service SMTP and you want to model a BS named Mail Communication. If just the Reduction Key for a nodeLostService is assigned, the BS would not be affected in case the IP Interface or the whole Node goes down. OpenNMS generates Alarms with different UEI which needs to be assigned to the BS as well. To make it easier to model this use case the IP Service generates the following Reduction Keys automatically:

- \texttt{uei.opennms.org/nodes/nodeLostService:%nodeId%:%ipAddress%:%serviceName%}: Matches Alarms when the given Monitored Service goes down
- \texttt{uei.opennms.org/nodes/interfaceDown:%nodeId%:%ipAddress%}: Matches Alarms when the given IP Interface of the Monitored Service goes down
- \texttt{uei.opennms.org/nodes/nodeDown:%nodeId%}: Matches Alarms when the given Node of the Monitored Service goes down

7.2.3. Custom Reduction Key

The Reduction Key edge is used to refer to specific instance of alarms. When an alarm with the given Reduction Key is present, the alarms' severity will be used to calculate the Operational Status of the BS. To give a better explanation a Friendly Name can be set and is used in the Business Service View. The format of the Reduction Key is build by a set of attributes as a key separated by \texttt{:} and enclosed in \%, i.e (attribute%:attribute%).

Example of a Reduction Key for a specific nodeLostService

%uei.opennms.org/nodes/nodeLostService:%nodeId%:%ipAddress%:%serviceName%
7.3. Map Functions

The *Map Functions* define how the *Severity* of the edge will be used in the *Reduce Function* of the parent when calculating the *Operational Status*.

The available *Map Functions* are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identity</td>
<td>Use the same <em>Severity</em> as <em>Operational Status</em> of the BS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>Increase the <em>Severity</em> by one level and use it as <em>Operational Status</em> of the BS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease</td>
<td>Decrease the <em>Severity</em> by one level and use it as <em>Operational Status</em> of the BS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SetTo</td>
<td>Set the <em>Operational Status</em> to a constant <em>Severity</em> value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore</td>
<td>The input of the <em>Edge</em> is ignored for <em>Operational Status</em> calculation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4. Reduce Functions

A *Reduce Function* is used to aggregate the *Operational Status* for the BS. The *Alarm Severity* from the *Edges* are used as input for the *Reduce Function*. For this operation the following *Reduce Functions* are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Highest Severity</td>
<td>Uses the value of the highest severity, <em>Weight</em> is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold</td>
<td>Uses the highest severity found more often than the given threshold, e.g. 0.26 can also be seen as 26%, which means at least 2 of 4 Alarms need to be raised to change the BS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highest Severity Above</td>
<td>Uses the highest severity greater than the given threshold severity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table shows the status calculation with *Edges* assigned to an *IP Service*. The *IP-Service* is driven by the monitoring of the *ICMP* service for three Web Server. In the table below you find a configuration where *Web Server 3* is weighted 3 times higher than the other and a threshold of 0.33 (33%) is configured.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Weight Factor</th>
<th>Input Severity</th>
<th>Operational Status</th>
<th>Critical</th>
<th>Major</th>
<th>Minor</th>
<th>Warning</th>
<th>Normal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Web-ICMP-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web-ICMP-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Weight Factor</td>
<td>Input Severity</td>
<td>Operational Status</td>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>Major</td>
<td>Minor</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web-ICMP-3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentages</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *Operational Status Severity* is evaluated from left to right, the first value higher then the configured *Threshold* is used. In this case the *Operational Status* is set to *Warning* because the first threshold which exceeds 33% is *Warning* with 80%.

### 7.5. Business Service Daemon

The calculation of the *Operational Status* of the BS is driven by the *Business Service Monitoring Daemon* (bsmd). The daemon is responsible for tracking the operational status of all BS and for sending events in case of operational status changes. Every time the configuration of a *Business Service* is changed a reload of the daemon’s configuration is required. This includes changes like the name of the *Business Service* or its attributes as well as changes regarding the *Reduction Keys*, contained *Business Services* or *IP Services*. The bsmd configuration can be reloaded with the following mechanisms:

- Click the *Reload Daemon* button in the *Business Service Editor*
- Send the *reloadDaemonConfig* event using *send-event.pl* or use the WebUI in *Manually Send an Event* with parameter *daemonName bsmd*
- Use the ReST API to perform a *POST* request to `/opennms/api/v2/business-services/daemon/reload`

If the reload of the configuration is done an event of type *uei.opennms.org/internal/reloadDaemonConfigSuccessful* is fired.

#### Example reloading bsmd configuration from CLI

```
$OPENNMS_HOME/bin/send-event.pl -p 'daemonName bsmd'
uei.opennms.org/internal/reloadDaemonConfig
```

#### Example reloading bsmd configuration through ReST POST

```
```
Chapter 8. Topology Map

This section describes how to configure the *Topology Map*.

8.1. Icons

Each Vertex on the *Topology Map* is represented by an icon. The default icon is configured in the icon mapping file: `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.<topology-namespace>.cfg`. If an icon mapping file does not exist for a *Topology Provider*, the provider does not support customization.

**List of available icon mapping files (may not be complete)**

```
org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.default.cfg ①
org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.application.cfg ②
org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.bsm.cfg ③
org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.linkd.cfg ④
org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.vmware.cfg ⑤
```

① Default icon mapping
② Icon mapping for the Application Topology Provider
③ Icon mapping for the Business Services Topology Provider
④ Icon mapping for the Linkd Topology Provider
⑤ Icon mapping for the Vmware Topology Provider

Each File contains a mapping in form of `<icon key> = <icon id>`.

**Icon key**

A *Topology Provider* dependent string which maps to an icon id. An icon key consists of one to multiple segments. Each segment must contain only numbers or characters. If multiple segments exist they must be separated by ., e.g. *my.custom.key*. Any existing default icon keys are not configurable and should not be changed.

**Icon id**

The icon id is a unique icon identifier to reference an icon within one of the available SVG icons located in `${OPENNMS_HOME}/jetty-webapps/opennms/svg`. For more details see Add new icons.

**Icon key and icon id specification using BNF**

```
icon key ::= segment["."segment]*
segment ::= text+ [ ("-" | "," | ":" ) text]*
text ::= (char | number)+
char ::= A | B | ... | Z | a | b | ... | z
number ::= 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9
icon id ::= segment
```
Example icon mapping file

```plaintext
# Business Service Topology
bsm.business-service = business_service ①
bsm.ip-service = IP_service ②
bsm.reduction-key = reduction_key ③
```

① Icon definition for Business Services
② Icon definition for IP Services
③ Icon definition for Reduction Keys

8.1.1. Icon resolution

The icon of a vertex is resolved as follows:

- If a vertex id to icon id mapping is defined, the icon referenced by the icon id is used.
- If a mapping for the icon key determined by the Topology Provider for the vertex is defined, the icon referenced by the icon id is used.
  - If no mapping exists and the icon key has more than one segments, reduce the icon key by the last segment and try resolving that icon key.
  - If no mapping is defined, the fallback icon key default is used.

The following example icon mapping is defined for the Linkd Topology Provider to illustrate this behaviour.

```plaintext
linkd.system.snmp.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.1.485 = server1
linkd.system.snmp.1.3.6 = server2
```

If the Enterprise OID of a node is `1.3.6.1.4.1.9.1.485` the icon with id `server1` is used. If the Enterprise OID of a node is `1.3.6` the icon with id `server2` is used. However, if the Enterprise OID of a node is `1.3.6.1.4.1.9.1.13` the icon with id `server2` is used.

Linkd Topology Provider

The Linkd Topology Provider uses the Enterprise OID from each node to determine the icon of a vertex.

8.1.2. Change existing icon mappings

The easiest way to change an icon representation of an existing Vertex is to use the Icon Selection Dialog from the Vertex' context menu in the Topology Map. This will create a custom icon key to icon id mapping in the Topology Provider specific icon mapping file. As icon key the Vertex id is used. This allows each Vertex to have its own icon.

If a more generic approach is preferred the icon mapping file can be modified manually.
Do NOT remove the default mappings and do NOT change the icon keys in the default mappings.

### 8.1.3. Add new icons

All available icons are stored in SVG files located in `${OPENNMS_HOME}/jetty-webapps/opennms/svg`. To add new icons, either add definitions to an existing SVG file or create a new SVG file in that directory.

Whatever way new icons are added to OpenNMS it is important that each new icon id describes a set of icons, rather than a single icon. The following example illustrates this.

#### Example SVG file with a custom icon with id `my-custom`

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE svg PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD SVG 1.1//EN" "http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/1.1/DTD/svg11.dtd">
<svg id="icons" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg">
  <g id="my-custom_icon">
    <g id="my-custom_active">
        <!-- rect, path, circle, etc elements, supported by SVG -->
    </g>
    <g id="my-custom_rollover">
        <!-- rect, path, circle, etc elements, supported by SVG -->
    </g>
    <g id="my-custom">
        <!-- rect, path, circle, etc elements, supported by SVG -->
    </g>
  </g>
  <!-- Additional groups ... -->
</svg>
```

1. Each icon must be in a SVG group with the id `<icon id>_icon`. Each SVG `<icon id>_icon` group must contain three sub groups with the ids: `<icon id>_active`, `<icon id>_rollover`, and `<icon id>`.
2. The icon to use when the Vertex is selected.
3. The icon to use when the Vertex is moused over.
4. The icon to use when the Vertex is not selected or not moused over (just visible).

It is important that each icon id is unique overall SVG files. This means there cannot be another `my-custom` icon id in any other SVG file.

If the new icons should be selectable from the *Topology Map’s Icon Selection Dialog* an entry with the new icon id must be added to the file `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.properties`.
### Snippet of `org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.list`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>access_gateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accesspoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fileserver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux_file_server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opennms_server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>printer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>router</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workgroup_switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my-custom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Already existing icon ids**
2. **New icon id**

---

The order of the entries in `org.opennms.features.topology.app.icons.list` determine the order in the *Icon Selection Dialog* in the *Topology Map*. 
Chapter 9. Database Reports

Reporting on information from the OpenNMS Horizon monitoring system is important for strategical or operational decisions. Database Reports give access to the embedded JasperReports engine and allows to create and customize report templates. These reports can be executed on demand or on a pre-defined schedule within OpenNMS Horizon.

Originally Database Reports were introduced to create reports working on data stored in the OpenNMS Horizon database only. This is no longer mandatory, also performance data can be used. Theoretically the reports do not necessarily need to be OpenNMS Horizon related.

The OpenNMS Horizon Report Engine allows the creation of various kinds of reports and also supports distributed report repositories. At the moment these features are not covered by this documentation. Only reports using JasperReports are described here.

9.1. Overview

The OpenNMS Horizon Report Engine uses the JasperReport library to create reports in various output formats. Each report template must be a *.jrxml file. The OpenNMS Horizon Report Engine passes a JDBC Connection to the OpenNMS Horizon Database to each report on execution.

Table 72. feature overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supported Output Formats</th>
<th>PDF, CSV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JasperReport Version</td>
<td>6.1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details on how JasperReports works, please have a look at the official documentation of Jaspersoft Studio.

9.2. Add a custom report

To add a new JasperReport report to the Local OpenNMS Horizon Report Repository, the following steps are required.

At first a new entry in the file $OPENNMS_HOME/etc/database-reports.xml must be created.

```
<report
    id="MyReport" ①
display-name="My Report" ②
    online="true" ③
    report-service="jasperReportService" ④
    description="This is an example description. It shows up in the web ui when creating an online report" ⑤
/>```

①②③④⑤
① A unique identifier.
② The name of the report. Is shown when using the web ui.
③ Defines if this report can be executed on demand, otherwise only scheduling is possible.
④ The report service implementation to use. In most cases this is jasperReportService.
⑤ A description of the report. Is shown when using the web ui.

In addition a new entry in the file $OPENNMS_HOME/etc/jasper-reports.xml must be created.

```xml
<report
    id="MyReport" ①
template="My-Report.jrxml" ②
gine="jdbc" ③
/>
```

① The identifier defined in the previous step. This identifier must exist in $OPENNMS_HOME/etc/database-reports.xml.
② The name of the template. The template must be located in $OPENNMS_HOME/etc/report-templates.
③ The engine to use. It is either jdbc or null.

### 9.3. Use of Jaspersoft Studio

When developing new reports it is recommended to use the Jaspersoft Studio application. It can be downloaded [here](#).

We recommend always to use the same Jaspersoft Studio version as the JasperReport library OpenNMS Horizon uses. Currently OpenNMS Horizon uses version 6.1.1.

#### 9.3.1. Connect to the OpenNMS Horizon Database

In order to actually create SQL statements against the OpenNMS Horizon database a database Data Adapter must be created. The official Jaspersoft Studio documentation and wiki covers this aspect.

#### 9.3.2. Use Measurements Datasource and Helpers

To use the Measurements API it is required to add the Measurements Datasource library to the build path of JasperStudio. This is achieved with right click in the Project Explorer and select Configure Buildpath.
1. Switch to the Libraries tab.
2. Click Add External JARs and select the `opennms-jasperstudio-extension-18.0.2-jar-with-dependencies.jar` file located in `$OPENNMS_HOME/contrib/jasperstudio-extension`.
3. Close the file selection dialog.

1. Close the dialog.
2. The Measurements Datasource and Helpers should now be available.
3. Go to the Dataset and Query Dialog in Jaspersoft Studio and select a language called `measurement`. 
Even if there is no Read Fields functionality available, the Data preview can be used. It is required the the access to the Measurements API is possible using the connection parameters MEASUREMENT_URL, MEASUREMENT_USERNAME and MEASUREMENT_PASSWORD. The Supported Fields section gives more details. In addition you have

9.4. Accessing Performance Data

Before OpenNMS Horizon 17 and OpenNMS Meridian 2016 it was possible to access the performance data stored in .rrd or .jrobin files directly by using the jrobin language extension provided by the RrdDataSource. This is no longer possible and the Measurements Datasource has to be used.

To access performance data within reports we created a custom Measurement Datasource which allows to query the Measurements API and process the returned data in your reports. Please refer to the official Measurements API documentation on how to use the Measurements API.

When using the Measurements Datasource within a report a HTTP connection to the Measurements API is only established if the report is NOT running within OpenNMS Horizon, e.g. when used with Jaspersoft Studio.

To receive data from the Measurements API simply create a query as follows:
Sample queryString to receive data from the Measurements API

```xml
<query-request step="300000" start="$P{startDateDateTime}" end="$P{endDateDateTime}" maxrows="2000"> ①
  <source aggregation="AVERAGE" label="IfInOctets" attribute="ifHCInOctets" transient="false" resourceId="node[$P{nodeId}].interfaceSnmp[$P{interface}]"/>
  <source aggregation="AVERAGE" label="IfOutOctets" attribute="ifHCOutOctets" transient="false" resourceId="node[$P{nodeId}].interfaceSnmp[$P{interface}]"/>
</query-request>
```

① The query language. In our case measurement, but JasperReports supports a lot out of the box, such as sql, xpath, etc.

### 9.4.1. Fields

Each datasource should return a number of fields, which then can be used in the report. The Measurement Datasource supports the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Field type</th>
<th>Field description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;label&gt;</td>
<td>java.lang.Double</td>
<td>Each Source defined as transient=false can be used as a field. The name of the field is the label, e.g. IfInOctets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>java.util.Date</td>
<td>The timestamp of the sample.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step</td>
<td>java.lang.Long</td>
<td>The Step size of the Response. Returns the same value for all rows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>java.lang.Long</td>
<td>The Start timestamp in milliseconds of the Response. Returns the same value for all rows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>java.lang.Long</td>
<td>The End timestamp in milliseconds of the Response. Returns the same value for all rows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details about the Response, please refer to the official Measurement API documentation.

### 9.4.2. Parameters

In addition to the queryString the following JasperReports parameters are supported.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter name</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MEASUREMENT_URL</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>The URL of the Measurements API, e.g. <a href="http://localhost:8980/opennms/rest/measurements">http://localhost:8980/opennms/rest/measurements</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEASUREMENT_USERNAME</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>If authentication is required, specify the username, e.g. admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEASUREMENT_PASSWORD</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>If authentication is required, specify the password, e.g. admin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.5. Helper methods

There are a couple of helper methods to help creating reports in OpenNMS Horizon.

These helpers come along with the Measurement Datasource.

Table 73. supported helper methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Helper class</th>
<th>Helper Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.netmgt.jasper.helper.MeasurementsHelper</td>
<td>getNodeOrNodeSourceDescriptor(nodeId, foreignSource, foreignId)</td>
<td>Generates a node source descriptor according to the input parameters. Either node[nodeId] or nodeSource[foreignSource:foreignKey] is returned. nodeSource[foreignSource:foreignId] is only returned if foreignSource and foreignId is not empty and not null. Otherwise always node[nodeId] is returned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>nodeId</strong>: String, the id of the node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>foreignSource</strong>: String, the foreign source of the node, may be null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>foreignId</strong>: String, the foreign id of the node, may be null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For more details checkout Usage of the node source descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helper class</td>
<td>Helper Method</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| org.opennms.netmg.jasper.help.MeasurementsHelper | getInterfaceDescriptor(snmpifname, snmpifdescr, snmphysaddr) | Returns the interface descriptor of a given interface, e.g. en0-005e607e9e00. The input parameters are prioritized. If a snmpifdescr is specified, it is used instead of the snmpifname. If a snmpifdescr is defined, it will be appended to snmpifname /snmpifdescr.  

- **snmpifname**: String, the interface name of the interface, e.g. en0. May be null.  
- **snmpifdescr**: String, the description of the interface, e.g. en0. May be null.  
- **snmphyaddr**: String, the mac address of the interface, e.g. 005e607e9e00. May be null.  

As each input parameter may be null, not all of them can be null at the same time. At least one input parameter has to be defined.  
For more details checkout [Usage of the interface descriptor.](#) |

### 9.5.1. Usage of the interface descriptor

An interfaceSnmp is addressed with the exact interface descriptor. To allow easy access to the interface descriptor a helper tool is provided. The following example shows the usage of that helper.
9.5.2. Usage of the node source descriptor

A node is addressed by a node source descriptor. The node source descriptor references the node either via the foreign source and foreign id or by the node id.

If store by foreign source is enabled only addressing the node via foreign source and foreign id is possible.

In order to make report creation easier, there is a helper method to create the node source descriptor.

For more information about store by foreign source, please have a look at our Wiki.

The following example shows the usage of that helper.
Depending on the input parameters you either get a node resource descriptor or a foreign source/foreign id resource descriptor.

9.5.3. Usage of the interface descriptor

An interfaceSnmp is addressed with the exact interface descriptor. To allow easy access to the interface descriptor a helper tool is provided. The following example shows the usage of that helper.

To get the appropriate interface descriptor depends on the input parameter.
9.5.4. Use HTTPS

To establish a secure connection to the Measurements API the public certificate of the running OpenNMS Horizon must be imported to the Java Trust Store. In addition OpenNMS Horizon must be configured to use that Java Trust Store. Please follow the instructions in this chapter to setup the Java Trust Store correctly.

In addition please also set the property org.opennms.netmg左手.jasper.measurement.ssl.enable in $OPENNMS_HOME/etc/opennms.properties to true to ensure that only secure connections are established.

⚠️ If org.opennms.netmg左手.jasper.measurement.ssl.enable is set to false an accidentally insecure connection can be established to the Measurements API location. A SSL secured connection can be established even if org.opennms.netmg左手.jasper.measurement.ssl enable is set to false.

9.6. Limitations

- Only a JDBC Datasource to the OpenNMS Horizon Database connection can be passed to a report, or no datasource at all. One does not have to use the datasource, though.
Chapter 10. Enhanced Linkd

*Enhanced Linkd (Enlinkd)* has been designed to discover connections between nodes using data generated by various link discovery protocols and accessible via SNMP. *Enlinkd* gathers this data on a regular interval and creates a snapshot of a device’s neighbors from its perspective. The connections discovered by *Enlinkd* are called *Links*. The term *Link*, within the context of *Enlinkd*, is not synonymous with the term "link" when used with respect to the network OSI Layer 2 domain, whereby a link only indicates a Layer 2 connection. A *Link* in context of *Enlinkd* is a more abstract concept and is used to describe any connection between two *OpenNMS Horizon Nodes*. These *Links* are discovered based on information provided by an agent’s understanding of connections at the OSI Layer 2, Layer 3, or other OSI layers.

The following sections describe the *Enlinkd* daemon and its configuration. Additionally, the supported *Link discovery* implementations will be described as well as a list of the SNMP MIBs that the SNMP agents must expose in order for *EnLinkd* to gather *Links* between *Nodes*. FYI: Detailed information about a node’s connections (discovered *Links*) and supporting link data can be seen on the *Node detail page* within the *OpenNMS Horizon* Web-UI.

### 10.1. Enlinkd Daemon

Essentially *Enlinkd* asks each device the following question: "What is the network topology from your point of view". From this point of view this will only provide local topology discovery features. It does not attempt to discover global topology or to do any correlation with the data coming from other nodes.

For large environments the behavior of *Enlinkd* can be configured. During the *Link* discovery process informational and error output is logged to a global log file.

*Table 74. Global log and configuration files for *Enlinkd***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enlinkd-configuration.xml</td>
<td>$OPENNMS_HOME/etc</td>
<td>Global configuration for the daemon process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enlinkd.log</td>
<td>$OPENNMS_HOME/logs</td>
<td>Global <em>Enlinkd</em> log file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>log4j2.xml</td>
<td>$OPENNMS_HOME/etc</td>
<td>Configuration file to set the log level for <em>Enlinkd</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration file for Enlinkd

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<enlinkd-configuration
    threads="5"
    initial_sleep_time="60000"
    rescan_interval="86400000"
    use-cdp-discovery="true"
    use-bridge-discovery="true"
    use-lldp-discovery="true"
    use-ospf-discovery="true"
    use-isis-discovery="true"
/>
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>threads</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Number of parallel threads used to discover the topology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initial_sleep_time</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>60000</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to wait for discovering the topology after OpenNMS Horizon is started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rescan_interval</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>8640000</td>
<td>Interval to rediscover and update the topology in milliseconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use-cdp-discovery</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enable or disable topology discovery based on CDP information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use-bridge-discovery</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enable or disable algorithm to discover the topology based on the Bridge MIB information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use-lldp-discovery</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enable or disable topology discovery based on LLDP information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use-ospf-discovery</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enable or disable topology discovery based on OSPF information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use-isis-discovery</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enable or disable topology discovery based on IS-IS information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If multiple protocols are enabled, the links will be discovered for each enabled discovery protocol. The topology WebUI will visualize Links for each discovery protocol. For example if you start CDP and LLDP discovery, the WebUI will visualize a CDP Link and an LLDP Link.

10.2. Layer 2 Link Discovery

Enlinkd is able to discover Layer 2 network links based on the following protocols:

- Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)
Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)

Transparent Bridge Discovery

This information are provided by SNMP Agents with appropriate MIB support. For this reason it is required to have a working SNMP configuration running. The following section describes the required SNMP MIB provided by the SNMP agent to allow the Link Discovery.

10.2.1. LLDP Discovery

The Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is a vendor-neutral link layer protocol. It is used by network devices for advertising their identity, capabilities, and neighbors. LLDP performs functions similar to several proprietary protocols, such as the Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), Extreme Discovery Protocol, Foundry Discovery Protocol (FDP), Nortel Discovery Protocol (also known as SONMP), and Microsoft’s Link Layer Topology Discovery (LLTD) [1: Wikipedia LLDP: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Link_Layer_Discovery_Protocol].

Only nodes with a running LLDP process can be part of the link discovery. The data is similar to running a `show lldp neighbor` command on the device. Linux and Windows servers don’t have an LLDP process running by default and will not be part of the link discovery.

The following OIDs are supported to discover and build the LLDP network topology.

**Table 76. Supported OIDs from LLDP-MIB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lldpLocChassisIdSubtype</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.3.1.0</code></td>
<td>The type of encoding used to identify the chassis associated with the local system. Possible values can be: <code>chassisComponent(1)</code> <code>interfaceAlias(2)</code> <code>portComponent(3)</code> <code>macAddress(4)</code> <code>networkAddress(5)</code> <code>interfaceName(6)</code> <code>local(7)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpLocChassisId</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.3.2.0</code></td>
<td>The string value used to identify the chassis component associated with the local system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpLocSysName</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.3.3.0</code></td>
<td>The string value used to identify the system name of the local system. If the local agent supports IETF RFC 3418, <code>lldpLocSysName</code> object should have the same value of <code>sysName</code> object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpLocPortIdSubtype</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.3.7.1.2</code></td>
<td>The type of port identifier encoding used in the associated <code>lldpLocPortId</code> object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpLocPortId</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.3.7.1.3</code></td>
<td>The string value used to identify the port component associated with a given port in the local system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OID</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpLocPortDesc</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.3.7.1.4</code></td>
<td>The string value used to identify the 802 LAN station’s port description associated with the local system. If the local agent supports IETF RFC 2863, lldpLocPortDesc object should have the same value of ifDescr object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpRemChassisIdSubtype</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.4</code></td>
<td>The type of encoding used to identify the chassis associated with the local system. Possible values can be: <code>chassisComponent(1)</code> <code>interfaceAlias(2)</code> <code>portComponent(3)</code> <code>macAddress(4)</code> <code>networkAddress(5)</code> <code>interfaceName(6)</code> <code>local(7)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpRemChassisId</td>
<td><code>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.5</code></td>
<td>The string value used to identify the chassis component associated with the remote system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OID</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpRemPortIdSubtype</td>
<td>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.6</td>
<td>The type of port identifier encoding used in the associated lldpRemPortId object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>interfaceAlias</em>(1) the octet string identifies a particular instance of the ifAlias object (defined in IETF RFC 2863). If the particular ifAlias object does not contain any values, another port identifier type should be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>portComponent</em>(2) the octet string identifies a particular instance of the entPhysicalAlias object (defined in IETF RFC 2737) for a port or backplane component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>macAddress</em>(3) this string identifies a particular unicast source address (encoded in network byte order and IEEE 802.3 canonical bit order) associated with the port (IEEE Std 802-2001).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>networkAddress</em>(4) this string identifies a network address associated with the port. The first octet contains the IANA AddressFamilyNumbers enumeration value for the specific address type, and octets 2 through N contain the networkAddress address value in network byte order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>interfaceName</em>(5) the octet string identifies a particular instance of the ifName object (defined in IETF RFC 2863). If the particular ifName object does not contain any values, another port identifier type should be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>agentCircuitId</em>(6) this string identifies a agent-local identifier of the circuit (defined in RFC 3046)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>local</em>(7) this string identifies a locally assigned port ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpRemPortId</td>
<td>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.7</td>
<td>The string value used to identify the port component associated with the remote system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpRemPortDesc</td>
<td>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.8</td>
<td>The string value used to identify the description of the given port associated with the remote system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lldpRemSysName</td>
<td>.1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.9</td>
<td>The string value used to identify the system name of the remote system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generic information about the LLDP process can be found in the LLDP Information box on the Node Detail Page of the device. Information gathered from these OIDs will be stored in the following database table:
10.2.2. CDP Discovery

The Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is a proprietary link layer protocol from Cisco. It is used by network devices to advertise identity, capabilities and neighbors. CDP performs functions similar to several proprietary protocols, such as the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), Extreme Discovery Protocol, Foundry Discovery Protocol (FDP), Nortel Discovery Protocol (also known as SONMP), and Microsoft’s Link Layer Topology Discovery (LLTD). The CDP discovery uses information provided by the CISCO-CDP-MIB and CISCO-VTP-MIB.

Only nodes with a running CDP process can be part of the link discovery. The data is similar to running a `show cdp neighbor` command on the IOS CLI of the device. Linux and Windows servers don’t have a CDP process running by default and will not be part of the link discovery.

The following OIDs are supported to discover and build the CDP network topology.

Table 77. Supported OIDS from the IF-MIB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ifDescr</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2.2.1.2.2</td>
<td>A textual string containing information about the interface. This string should include the name of the manufacturer, the product name and the version of the interface hardware/software.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 78. Supported OIDS from the CISCO-CDP-MIB to discover links

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cdpInterfaceName</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2.3.1.1.1.6</td>
<td>The name of the local interface as advertised by CDP in the Port-ID TLV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OID</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpCacheEntry</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.2.1.1.1</strong></td>
<td>An entry (conceptual row) in the <code>cdpCacheTable</code>, containing the information received via CDP on one interface from one device. Entries appear when a CDP advertisement is received from a neighbor device. Entries disappear when CDP is disabled on the interface, or globally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpCacheAddress</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.2.1.1.3</strong></td>
<td>An indication of the type of address contained in the corresponding instance of <code>cdpCacheAddress</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpCacheAddress</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.2.1.1.4</strong></td>
<td>The (first) network-layer address of the device’s SNMP-agent as reported in the Address TLV of the most recently received CDP message. For example, if the corresponding instance of <code>cacheAddressType</code> had the value <code>ip(1)</code>, then this object would be an IP-address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpCacheVersion</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.2.1.1.5</strong></td>
<td>The Version string as reported in the most recent CDP message. The zero-length string indicates no Version field (TLV) was reported in the most recent CDP message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpCacheDeviceId</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.2.1.1.6</strong></td>
<td>The Device-ID string as reported in the most recent CDP message. The zero-length string indicates no Device-ID field (TLV) was reported in the most recent CDP message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpCacheDevicePort</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.2.1.1.7</strong></td>
<td>The Port-ID string as reported in the most recent CDP message. This will typically be the value of the <code>ifName</code> object (e.g., Ethernet0). The zero-length string indicates no Port-ID field (TLV) was reported in the most recent CDP message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpCachePlatform</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.2.1.1.8</strong></td>
<td>The Device’s Hardware Platform as reported in the most recent CDP message. The zero-length string indicates that no Platform field (TLV) was reported in the most recent CDP message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpGlobalRun</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.3.1.0</strong></td>
<td>An indication of whether the Cisco Discovery Protocol is currently running. Entries in <code>cdpCacheTable</code> are deleted when CDP is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cdpGlobalDeviceId</strong></td>
<td><strong>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2 3.1.3.4.0</strong></td>
<td>The device ID advertised by this device. The format of this device id is characterized by the value of <code>cdpGlobalDeviceIdFormat</code> object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OID</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cdpGlobalDeviceIdFormat</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.2.3.1.3.7.0</td>
<td>An indication of the format of Device-Id contained in the corresponding instance of cdpGlobalDeviceId. User can only specify the formats that the device is capable of as denoted in cdpGlobalDeviceIdFormatCpb object. <strong>serialNumber(1):</strong> indicates that the value of cdpGlobalDeviceId object is in the form of an ASCII string contain the device serial number. <strong>macAddress(2):</strong> indicates that the value of cdpGlobalDeviceId object is in the form of Layer 2 MAC address. <strong>other(3):</strong> indicates that the value of cdpGlobalDeviceId object is in the form of a platform specific ASCII string contain info that identifies the device. For example: ASCII string contains serialNumber appended/prepended with system name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 79. Supported OIDS from the CISCO-VTP-MIB.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vtpVersion</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.46.1.1.1.0</td>
<td>The version of VTP in use on the local system. A device will report its version capability and not any particular version in use on the device. <strong>If the device does not support VTP, the version is none(3).</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoVtpVlanNameState</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.46.1.3.1.1.2</td>
<td>The state of this VLAN. The state mtuTooBigForDevice indicates that this device cannot participate in this VLAN because the VLAN’s MTU is larger than the device can support. The state mtuTooBigForTrunk indicates that while this VLAN’s MTU is supported by this device, it is too large for one or more of the device’s trunk ports. operational(1), suspended(2), mtuTooBigForDevice(3), mtuTooBigForTrunk(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoVtpVlanType</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.46.1.3.1.1.3</td>
<td>The type of this VLAN. ethernet(1), fddi(2), tokenRing(3), fddiNet(4), trNet(5), deprecated(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciscoVtpVlanName</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.46.1.3.1.1.4</td>
<td>The name of this VLAN. This name is used as the ELAN-name for an ATM LAN-Emulation segment of this VLAN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generic information about the CDP process can be found in the CDP Information box on the Node Detail Page of the device. Information gathered from these OIDs will be stored in the following database table:
10.2.3. Transparent Bridge Discovery

Discovering Layer 2 network links using the Bridge Forwarding table requires a special algorithm. To discover Links an algorithm based on a scientific paper with the title Topology Discovery for Large Ethernet Networks is implemented. The gathered information is used to classify Links in macLink and bridgeLink. A macLink represents a Link between a workstation or server identified by a mac address. A bridgeLink is a connection between backbone ports.

Transparent bridging is not loop free so if you have loops you have to enable the spanning tree protocol that will detect loops and again will put some ports in a blocking state to avoid loops. To get links it is necessary to perform some calculations that let us define the Links. The following MIBS must be supported by the SNMP agent to allow Transparent Bridge Discovery.

Table 80. Supported MIBS from the Cisco-VTP MIB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vtpVersion</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.46</td>
<td>The version of VTP in use on the local system. A device will report its version capability and not any particular version in use on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.1.1.1.8</td>
<td>If the device does not support VTP, the version is none(3).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 81. Supported OIDs from the IP-MIB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ipNetToMediaIfIndex</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.1</td>
<td>The interface on which this entry's equivalence is effective. The layer-2 interface identified by a particular value of this index is the same interface as identified by the same value of ifIndex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipNetToMediaPhyAddress</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.2</td>
<td>The media-dependent physical address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The IpAddress corresponding to the media-dependent physical address.

The type of mapping. Setting this object to the value invalid(2) has the effect of invalidating the corresponding entry in the ipNetToMediaTable. That is, it effectively dissociates the interface identified with said entry from the mapping identified with said entry. It is an implementation-specific matter as to whether the agent removes an invalidated entry from the table. Accordingly, management stations must be prepared to receive tabular information from agents that corresponds to entries not currently in use. Proper interpretation of such entries requires examination of the relevant ipNetToMediaType object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dot1dBaseBridgeAddress</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.1.0</td>
<td>The MAC address used by this bridge when it must be referred to in a unique fashion. It is recommended that this be the numerically smallest MAC address of all ports that belong to this bridge. However it is only required to be unique. When concatenated with dot1dStpPriority a unique BridgeIdentifier is formed which is used in the Spanning Tree Protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dBaseNumPorts</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.2.0</td>
<td>The number of ports controlled by this bridging entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dBaseType</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.3.0</td>
<td>Indicates what type of bridging this bridge can perform. If a bridge is actually performing a certain type of bridging this will be indicated by entries in the port table for the given type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dBasePort</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.4.1</td>
<td>The port number of the port for which this entry contains bridge management information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dPortIfIndex</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.4.1.2</td>
<td>The value of the instance of the ifIndex object, defined in MIB-II, for the interface corresponding to this port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpProtocolSpecification</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.1.0</td>
<td>An indication of what version of the Spanning Tree Protocol is being run. The value decLb100(2) indicates the DEC LANbridge 100 Spanning Tree protocol. IEEE 802.1d implementations will return ieee8021d(3). If future versions of the IEEE Spanning Tree Protocol are released that are incompatible with the current version a new value will be defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpPriority</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.2</td>
<td>The value of the writeable portion of the Bridge ID, i.e., the first two octets of the (8 octet long) Bridge ID. The other (last) 6 octets of the Bridge ID are given by the value of dot1dBaseBridgeAddress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpDesignatedRoot</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.5</td>
<td>The bridge identifier of the root of the spanning tree as determined by the Spanning Tree Protocol as executed by this node. This value is used as the Root Identifier parameter in all configuration Bridge PDUs originated by this node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpRootCost</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.6</td>
<td>The cost of the path to the root as seen from this bridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpRootPort</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.7</td>
<td>The port number of the port which offers the lowest cost path from this bridge to the root bridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpPort</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.1</td>
<td>The port number of the port for which this entry contains Spanning Tree Protocol management information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpPortPriority</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.2</td>
<td>The value of the priority field which is contained in the first (in network byte order) octet of the (2 octet long) Port ID. The other octet of the Port ID is given by the value of dot1dStpPort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpPortState</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.3</td>
<td>The port’s current state as defined by application of the Spanning Tree Protocol. This state controls what action a port takes on reception of a frame. If the bridge has detected a port that is malfunctioning it will place that port into the broken(6) state. For ports which are disabled (see dot1dStpPortEnable), this object will have a value of disabled(1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpPortEnable</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.4</td>
<td>The enabled/disabled status of the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpPortPathCost</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.5</td>
<td>The contribution of this port to the path cost of paths towards the spanning tree root which include this port. 802.1D-1990 recommends that the default value of this parameter be in inverse proportion to the speed of the attached LAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpDesignatedRoot</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.6</td>
<td>The unique Bridge Identifier of the Bridge recorded as the Root in the Configuration BPDUtransmitted by the Designated Bridge for the segment to which the port is attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpDesignatedCost</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.7</td>
<td>The path cost of the Designated Port of the segment connected to this port. This value is compared to the Root Path Cost field in received bridge PDUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1dStpDesignatedBridge</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.8</td>
<td>The Bridge Identifier of the bridge which this port considers to be the Designated Bridge for this port’s segment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**dot1dStpPortDesignatedPort** 1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.9

The Port Identifier of the port on the Designated Bridge for this port’s segment.

**dot1dTpFdbAddress** 1.3.6.1.2.1.17.4.3.1.1

A unicast MAC address for which the bridge has forwarding and/or filtering information.

**dot1dTpFdbPort** 1.3.6.1.2.1.17.4.3.1.2

Either the value '0', or the port number of the port on which a frame having a source address equal to the value of the corresponding instance of dot1dTpFdbAddress has been seen. A value of '0' indicates that the port number has not been learned but that the bridge does have some forwarding/filtering information about this address (e.g. in the dot1dStaticTable). Implementors are encouraged to assign the port value to this object whenever it is learned even for addresses for which the corresponding value of dot1dTpFdbStatus is not learned(3).

**dot1dTpFdbStatus** 1.3.6.1.2.1.17.4.3.1.3

The status of this entry. The meanings of the values are:

- **other(1)**: none of the following.
  This would include the case where some other MIB object (not the corresponding instance of dot1dTpFdbPort, nor an entry in the dot1dStaticTable) is being used to determine if and how frames addressed to the value of the corresponding instance of dot1dTpFdbAddress are being forwarded.

- **invalid(2)**: this entry is not longer valid (e.g., it was learned but has since aged-out), but has not yet been flushed from the table.

- **learned(3)**: the value of the corresponding instance of dot1dTpFdbPort was learned, and is being used.

- **self(4)**: the value of the corresponding instance of dot1dTpFdbAddress represents one of the bridge’s addresses. The corresponding instance of dot1dTpFdbPort indicates which of the bridge’s ports has this address.

- **mgmt(5)**: the value of the corresponding instance of dot1dTpFdbAddress is also the value of an existing instance of dot1dStaticAddress.

---

**Table 83. Supported OIDs from the Q-BRIDGE-MIB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dot1qTpFdbPort</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.2.2.1.2</td>
<td>Either the value 0, or the port number of the port on which a frame having a source address equal to the value of the corresponding instance of dot1qTpFdbAddress has been seen. A value of 0 indicates that the port number has not been learned but that the device does have some forwarding/filtering information about this address (e.g., in the dot1qStaticUnicastTable). Implementors are encouraged to assign the port value to this object whenever it is learned, even for addresses for which the corresponding value of dot1qTpFdbStatus is not learned(3).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `dot1qTpFdbStatus` | \[1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.2.2.1.3\] | The status of this entry. The meanings of the values are:
- **other(1)**: none of the following. This may include the case where some other MIB object (not the corresponding instance of `dot1qTpFdbPort`, nor an entry in the `dot1qStaticUnicastTable`) is being used to determine if and how frames addressed to the value of the corresponding instance of `dot1qTpFdbAddress` are being forwarded.
- **invalid(2)**: this entry is no longer valid (e.g., it was learned but has since aged out), but has not yet been flushed from the table.
- **learned(3)**: the value of the corresponding instance of `dot1qTpFdbPort` was learned and is being used.
- **self(4)**: the value of the corresponding instance of `dot1qTpFdbAddress` represents one of the device’s addresses. The corresponding instance of `dot1qTpFdbPort` indicates which of the device’s ports has this address.
- **mgmt(5)**: the value of the corresponding instance of `dot1qTpFdbAddress` is also the value of an existing instance of `dot1qStaticAddress`.

Generic information about the bridge link discovery process can be found in the *Bridge Information* box on the *Node Detail Page* of the device. Information gathered from this *OID* will be stored in the following database table:
10.3. Layer 3 Link Discovery

With Enlinkd it is possible to get Links based on network routing applications. The following routing daemons can be used to provide a discovery of links based Layer 3 information:

- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
- Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS)

This information is provided by SNMP Agents with appropriate MIB support. For this reason it is required to have a working SNMP configuration running. The link data discovered from Enlinkd is provided in the Topology User Interface and on the detail page of a node.
10.3.1. OSPF Discovery

The relevant MIBs for OSPF topology are OSPF-MIB and OSPF-TRAP-MIB. In these MIBs are defined the relevant objects used to find OSPF links, specifically:

- The *Router ID* which, in OSPF, has the same format as an IP address
- But identifies the router independent of its IP address.

Also all the interfaces are identified by their IP addresses. The OSPF links come from the SNMP `ospfNbrTable` defined in OSPF-MIB and this table is in practice persisted in the `ospfLink` table:

Table 84. Supported OIDs from OSPF-MIB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ospfRouterId</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.1.1.0</td>
<td>A 32-bit integer uniquely identifying the router in the Autonomous System. By convention, to ensure uniqueness, this should default to the value of one of the router’s IP interface addresses. This object is persistent and when written the entity should save the change to non-volatile storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfAdminStat</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.1.2.0</td>
<td>The administrative status of OSPF in the router. The value <em>enabled</em> denotes that the OSPF Process is active on at least one interface; <em>disabled</em> disables it on all interfaces. This object is persistent and when written the entity should save the change to non-volatile storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfVersionNumber</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.1.3.0</td>
<td>The current version number of the OSPF protocol is 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfAreaBdrRtrStatus</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.1.4.0</td>
<td>A flag to note whether this router is an Area Border Router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfAreaASBdrRtrStatus</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.1.5.0</td>
<td>A flag to note whether this router is configured as an Autonomous System Border Router. This object is persistent and when written the entity should save the change to non-volatile storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfIfIpAddress</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.7.1.1</td>
<td>The IP address of this OSPF interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfAddressLessIf</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.7.1.2</td>
<td>For the purpose of easing the instancing of addressed and addressless interfaces; this variable takes the value 0 on interfaces with IP addresses and the corresponding value of <em>ifIndex</em> for interfaces having no IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfNbrIpAddr</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.10.1.1</td>
<td>The IP address this neighbor is using in its IP source address. Note that, on addressless links, this will not be 0.0.0.0 but the address of another of the neighbor’s interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfNbrAddressLessIndex</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.10.1.2</td>
<td>On an interface having an IP address, zero. On addressless interfaces, the corresponding value of <em>ifIndex</em> in the Internet Standard MIB. On row creation, this can be derived from the instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OID</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospfNbrRtrId</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.4.10.1.3</td>
<td>A 32-bit integer (represented as a type IPAddress) uniquely identifying the neighboring router in the Autonomous System.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 85. Supported OIDs from IP-MIB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ipAdEntIfIndex</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.2</td>
<td>The index value which uniquely identifies the interface to which this entry is applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipAdEntNetMask</td>
<td>1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.3</td>
<td>The subnet mask associated with the IPv4 address of this entry. Value of the mask is an IPv4 address with all the network bits set to 1 and all the hosts bits set to 0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generic information about the **OSPF** link discovery process can be found in the **OSPF Information** box on the **Node Detail Page** of the device. Information gathered from these OIDs will be stored in the following database table:

**Figure 20. Database tables related to OSPF discovery**

### 10.3.2. IS-IS Discovery

**IS-IS Links** are found in the **isisISAdjTable** that is defined in **ISIS-MIB** (mib-rfc4444.txt). In this table is found the information needed to find the Adjacency Intermediate System. The information about IS-IS is stored into two tables: **isisElement** and **isisLink**. **isisElement** contains the **ISISSysID**, a unique identifier of the "Intermediate System" (the name for the Router in ISO protocols). Each entry in this SNMP MIB table represents a unidirectional link from the **Intermediate System** that is queried to the **Adjacent Intermediate Systems** running IS-IS and “peering” with the source router. If two routers IS-A and IS-B support **ISIS-MIB**, then **EnLinkd** will create two link entries in OpenNMS Horizon: one from IS-A to IS-B (from the `adjtable` of IS-A) the complementary link back from IS-B to IS-A (from the...
adjTable of IS-B. IS-IS links are represented in the **IS-IS-MIB** as follows:

**Table 86. Supported OIDs from IS-IS-MIB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isisSysID</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The ID for this Intermediate System. This value is appended to each of the area addresses to form the Network Entity Titles. The derivation of a value for this object is implementation specific. Some implementations may automatically assign values and not permit an SNMP write, while others may require the value to be set manually. Configured values <strong>must</strong> survive an agent reboot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisSysAdminStat</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The administrative state of this Intermediate System. Setting this object to the value on when its current value is off enables the Intermediate System. Configured values <strong>must</strong> survive an agent reboot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisSysObject</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>isisSysObject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisCircIfIndex</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The value of ifIndex for the interface to which this circuit corresponds. This object cannot be modified after creation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisCircAdminStat</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The administrative state of the circuit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisISAdjState</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The state of the adjacency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisISAdjNeighSNPAAddress</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The SNPA address of the neighboring system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisISAdjNeighSysType</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The type of the neighboring system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisISAdjNeighSysID</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The system ID of the neighboring Intermediate System.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isisISAdjNbrExtendedCircID</td>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.138</td>
<td>The 4-byte Extended Circuit ID learned from the Neighbor during 3-way handshake, or 0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generic information about the **IS-IS** link discovery process can be found in the **IS-IS Information** box on the **Node Detail Page** of the device. Information gathered from this OIDs will be stored in the following database table:
Figure 21. Database tables related to IS-IS discovery

### isislink

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod eid</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e id</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e index</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e ad index</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e ip index</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e ad state</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e ad state</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e address</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e neighs type</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e neighs xid</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e infra xid</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e create time</td>
<td>TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis e last poll</td>
<td>TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### isis element

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod eid</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis sys id</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis sys admin state</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis node create time</td>
<td>TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis node last poll</td>
<td>TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```sql
-- fk_isislink_nodeid
FOREIGN KEY (nod eid) REFERENCES node(nod eid)
```

```sql
-- fk_isiselement_nodeid
FOREIGN KEY (nod eid) REFERENCES node(nod eid)
```

### node

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nod eid</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node create time</td>
<td>TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod p p mid</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod type</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod sys id</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod sys name</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod sys desc</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod sys loc</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod sys contact</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod label</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod db source</td>
<td>CHARACTER(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod db id name</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod db m name</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oper sys name</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inst op poll</td>
<td>TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign source</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(34)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign id</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING(8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 11. Operation

11.1. HTTPS / SSL

This chapter covers the possibilities to configure OpenNMS Horizon to protect web sessions with HTTPS and also explains how to configure OpenNMS Horizon to establish secure connections.

In order to use HTTPS the Java command line tool keytool is used. It is automatically shipped with each JRE installation. More details about the keytool can be found at the official documentation.

11.1.1. Standalone HTTPS with Jetty

To configure OpenNMS Horizon to protect web sessions with HTTPS please refer to the official OpenNMS Horizon Wiki article Standalone HTTPS with Jetty.

11.1.2. OpenNMS Horizon as HTTPS client

To establish secure HTTPS connections within Java one has to setup a so called Java Trust Store.

The Java Trust Store contains all certificates a Java application should trust when making connections as a client to a server.

Setup Java Trust Store

To setup the Java Trust Store the following command can be issued.

If you do not have a Java Trust Store setup yet, it is created automatically.

Import a certificate to the Java Trust Store

```
keytool \\
    -import \ ① \\
    -v \ ② \\
    -trustcacerts \ ③ \\
    -alias localhost \ ④ \\
    -file localhost.cert \ ⑤ \\
    -keystore /$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/trust-store.jks ⑥
```

① Define to import a certificate or a certificate chain
② Use verbose output
③ Define to trust certificates from cacerts
④ The alias for the certificate to import, e.g. the common name
⑤ The certificate to import
⑥ The location of the Java Trust Store
If you create a new *Java Trust Store* you are asked for a password to protect the *Java Trust Store*. If you update an already existing *Java Trust Store* please enter the password you chose when creating the *Java Trust Store* initially.

**Download existing public certificate**

To Download an existing public certificate the following command can be issued.

*Download an existing public certificate*

```
openssl \
  s_client \
  -showcerts \
  -connect localhost:443 \
  -servername localhost \
  < /dev/null \
  > localhost.cert
```

**Configure OpenNMS Horizon to use the defined *Java Trust Store***

To setup *OpenNMS Horizon* to use the defined *Java Trust Store* the according `javax.net.ssl.trustStore*` properties have to be set. Open `$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/opennms.properties` and add the properties `javax.net.ssl.trustStore` and `javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword` as shown below.

*$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/opennms.properties snippet to define a Java Trust Store*

```
javax.net.ssl.trustStore=/$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/trust-store.jks ①
javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=change-me ②
```

① The location of the *Java Trust Store*

② The password of the *Java Trust Store*

For more details on the Java build-in SSL System properties have a look at chapter [Debugging / Properties](#).

---

Each time you modify the *Java Trust Store* you have to restart *OpenNMS Horizon* to have the changes take effect.
11.1.3. Differences between Java Trust Store and Java Key Store

The Java Trust Store is used to determine whether a remote connection should be trusted or not, e.g. whether a remote party is who it claims to be (client use case).

The Java Key Store is used to decide which authentication credentials should be sent to the remote host for authentication during SSL handshake (server use case).

For more details, please check the JSSE Reference Guide.

11.1.4. Debugging / Properties

If you encounter issues while using HTTPS it might be useful to enable debugging or use one of the build-in Java System Properties to configure the proper use of SSL.

Table 87. Java build-in System Properties (Source)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>javax.net.ssl.keyStore</td>
<td>Location of the Java keystore file containing an application process's own certificate and private key. On Windows, the specified pathname must use forward slashes, /, in place of backslashes, .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>javax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword</td>
<td>Password to access the private key from the keystore file specified by javax.net.ssl.keyStore. This password is used twice: to unlock the keystore file (store password) and to decrypt the private key stored in the keystore (key password). In other words, the JSSE framework requires these passwords to be identical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>javax.net.ssl.keyStoreType</td>
<td>(Optional) For Java keystore file format, this property has the value jks (or JKS). You do not normally specify this property, because its default value is already jks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>javax.net.ssl.trustStore</td>
<td>Location of the Java keystore file containing the collection of CA certificates trusted by this application process (trust store). On Windows, the specified pathname must use forward slashes, /, in place of backslashes, . If a trust store location is not specified using this property, the Sun JSSE implementation searches for and uses a keystore file in the following locations (in order): $JAVA_HOME/lib/security/jssecacerts and $JAVA_HOME/lib/security/cacerts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword</td>
<td>Password to unlock the keystore file (store password) specified by javax.net.ssl.trustStore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 11.2. resourcecli: simple resource management tool

Sometimes a user wants to list or manually delete collected data (resources) of an OpenNMS Horizon instance. When using RRDTool- or JRobin-based storage this can easily be achieved by traversing the share/rrd directory and its subdirectories. The several .rrd or .jrb files can be listed or deleted for individual nodes. When Newts-based storage is used the data is stored and indexed remotely on a Cassandra cluster. In this case the cluster must be queried for available resources. For the deletion of resources the data and all generated indexes must be gathered and removed. The resourcecli tool simplifies this process and works with Newts-based storage as well as with RRDTool and JRobin files.

#### 11.2.1. Usage

The utility is installed by default and its wrapper script is located in the ${OPENNMS_HOME}/bin directory.

```
$ cd /path/to/opennms/bin
$ ./resourcecli
```

When invoked without parameters the usage and help information is printed.

The resourcecli tool uses sub-commands for the different tasks. Each of these sub-commands provide different options and parameters. The command line tool accepts the following sub-commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>Queries an OpenNMS Horizon server for available resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>Displays details for a given resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Deletes a given resource and all of its child resources.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following global options are available in each of the sub-commands of the tool:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--help</td>
<td>Displays help and exit</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username VALUE</td>
<td>Username for connecting to <em>OpenNMS Horizon</em></td>
<td>admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password VALUE</td>
<td>Password for connecting to <em>OpenNMS Horizon</em></td>
<td>admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--url VALUE</td>
<td>URL of the <em>OpenNMS Horizon</em> instance to connect to</td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8980/opennms">http://localhost:8980/opennms</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.2.2. Sub-command: list

This sub-command is used to query an *OpenNMS Horizon* instance for its available resources. The following example queries the local *OpenNMS Horizon* instance with the credentials `admin/secret`.

```
$ ./resourcecli --username admin --password secret list
node[72]
  node[72].nodeSnmp[]
  node[72].responseTime[192.168.0.2]
node[70]
  node[70].nodeSnmp[]
  node[70].interfaceSnmp[bridge0]
  node[70].interfaceSnmp[bridge1]
  node[70].interfaceSnmp[vlan0-002500fe1bf3]
  node[70].responseTime[50.16.15.18]
  node[70].responseTime[192.168.0.1]

<output omitted>
```

### 11.2.3. Sub-command: show

This sub-command can be used to show details for a given resource. The following example display details for the resource identified by resourceId `node[70]`.

```
$ ./resourcecli --username admin --password secret show node[70]
```
$ ./resourcecli --username admin --password secret show node\[70\]
ID: node[70]
Name: 70
Label: MyRouter
Type: Node
Link: element/node.jsp?node=70
Parent ID: null
Children:
  node[70].nodeSnmp[]
  node[70].interfaceSnmp[bridge0]
  node[70].interfaceSnmp[bridge1]
  node[70].interfaceSnmp[vlan0-002500fe1bf3]
    node[70].responseTime[50.16.15.18]
  node[70].responseTime[192.168.0.1]
Attributes:
  External:
  Graphs:
  Strings:

The following options are available for the show sub-command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;resource&gt;</td>
<td>The resourceId of the resource to display.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.2.4. Sub-command: delete

This sub-command can be used to delete a given resource and its child resources. The following example deletes the resource identified by resourceId node[70]. When successful, this command does not generate any output.

```
$ ./resourcecli --username admin --password secret delete node\[70\]
$ 
```

The following options are available for the delete sub-command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;resource&gt;</td>
<td>The resourceId of the resource to be deleted.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.3. newts-repository-converter: Rrd/Jrb to Newts migration utility

This utility can be used to migrate existing RRDTool- or JRobin-based data to a Newts cluster. This will be achieved by traversing the share/rrd directory and its subdirectories, reading the data and
properties files and persisting this data to Newts.

11.3.1. Migration

The following suggestions try to minimize the data collection gap that occur when reconfiguring OpenNMS Horizon for a different storage strategy. First, we determine the parameters needed for migration of the existing data. After that, we reconfigure OpenNMS Horizon to persists all new collected data to Newts storage. Finally, the Rrd- or JRobin-based data will be converted and persisted to Newts using the newts-repository-converter utility.

Prerequisites

- Working OpenNMS Horizon installation with RRDTool- or JRobin-based storage strategy configured.
- Installed and working Newts cluster reachable by the OpenNMS Horizon instance.

Migration plan

1. Check and write down the values for the following options in your opennms.properties file. You will need these information later to invoke the newts-repository-converter utility.
   a. File etc/opennms.properties:
      • Check for the entry org.opennms.rrd.storeByGroup whether storeByGroup is enabled.
      • Check for the entry rrd.base.dir for the location where Rrd or Jrb files are stored.
      • Check for the entry rrd.binary for the location of the RRDTool binary.
   b. File etc/rrd-configuration.properties:
      • Check for the entry org.opennms.rrd.strategyClass whether JRobinRrdStrategy (JRobin) or JniRrdStrategy/MultithreadedJniRrdStrategy (RRDTool) is used.

2. Stop your OpenNMS Horizon instance.

3. Reconfigure OpenNMS Horizon to persist data to Newts - so, when correctly configured all new samples will be persisted into Newts after OpenNMS Horizon is started. Note, that the converter assumes storeByForeignSource to be enabled.

4. Start your OpenNMS Horizon instance.

5. Use the newts-repository-converter utility to convert the existing data to Newts by specifying the options that correspond to the information gathered during step #1.

This procedure will minimize the data collection gap to the time needed to reconfigure OpenNMS Horizon for Newts storage.

The newts_converter utility needs the path to the base directory of your OpenNMS Horizon instance for reading the configuration files. For instance the utility needs the datasource configuration during the migration process to query the database to lookup node data.
11.3.2. Usage

The utility is installed by default and its wrapper script is located in the `OPENNMS_HOME/bin` directory.

```
$ cd /path/to/opennms/bin
$ ./newts-repository-converter
```

When invoked without parameters the usage and help information is printed.

The `newts-repository-converter` tool provides the following options and parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short-option</th>
<th>Long-option</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>Prints help and usage information</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>onms-home</td>
<td>OpenNMS Horizon Home Directory</td>
<td>/opt/opennms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>rrd-dir</td>
<td>The path to the RRD data</td>
<td>ONMS-HOME/share/rrd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>rrd-tool</td>
<td>Whether to use rrdtool or JRobin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>rrd-binary</td>
<td>The binary path to the rrdtool command (only used if rrd-tool is set)</td>
<td>/usr/bin/rrdtool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>store-by-group</td>
<td>Whether store by group was enabled or not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>threads</td>
<td>Number of conversion threads</td>
<td>defaults to number of CPUs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.3.3. Example 1: convert Rrd-based data with storeByGroup enabled

The following example shows how to convert RRDTool-based data that was stored with `storeByGroup` enabled. The OpenNMS Horizon home is `/opt/opennms`, the data directory is `/opt/opennms/share/rrd` and the RRDTool binary located at `/usr/local/bin/rrdtool`. This program call will use 16 concurrent threads to convert the `Rrd` files.

```
$ ./newts-repository-converter -t true -s true -T /usr/local/bin/rrdtool -n 16
<output omitted>
```

11.3.4. Example 2: convert JRobin-based data with storeByGroup disabled

The following example shows how to convert JRobin-based data located in the directory `/mnt/opennms/rrd` that was collected with `storeByGroup` disabled. This program call will use 8 concurrent threads to convert the `Jrb` files.

```
$ ./newts-repository-converter -t false -s false -T /usr/local/bin/rrdtool -n 8
<output omitted>
```
11.4. Newts

This section describes how to configure OpenNMS Horizon to use Newts and how to use OpenNMS Horizon to monitor your Cassandra cluster.

11.4.1. Configuration

Enabling Newts

OpenNMS Horizon can be configured to use Newts by setting the following property in in `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/opennms.properties`:

```
org.opennms.timeseries.strategy=newts
```

It is also highly recommended that resources stored in Newts are referenced by their foreign source and foreign ID, as opposed to their database ID. To this end, the following property should also be set in the same file:

```
org.opennms.rrd.storeByForeignSource=true
```

With these set, OpenNMS Horizon will begin persisting metrics using the Newts engine when restarted.

Additional configuration options are presented in the next section.

Configuration Reference

The following properties, found in `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/opennms.properties`, can be used to configure and tune Newts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.keyspace</td>
<td>newts</td>
<td>Name of the keyspace to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.hostname</td>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>IP address or hostnames of the Cassandra nodes. Multiple hosts can be separated by a comma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.port</td>
<td>9042</td>
<td>CQL port used to connect to the Cassandra nodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.username</td>
<td>cassandra</td>
<td>Username to use when connecting to Cassandra via CQL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.password</td>
<td>cassandra</td>
<td>Password to use when connecting to Cassandra via CQL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.ssl</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Enable/disable SSL when connecting to Cassandra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.read_consistency</td>
<td>ONE</td>
<td>Consistency level used for <em>read</em> operations. See Configuring data consistency for a list of available options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.write_consistency</td>
<td>ANY</td>
<td>Consistency level used for <em>write</em> operations. See Configuring data consistency for a list of available options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.max_batch_size</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Maximum number of records to insert in a single transaction. Limited by the size of the Cassandra cluster’s batch_size_fail_threshold_in_kb property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.ring_buffer_size</td>
<td>8192</td>
<td>Maximum number of records that can be held in the ring buffer. Must be a power of two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.writer_threads</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Number of threads used to pull samples from the ring buffer and insert them into Newts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.ttl</td>
<td>31540000</td>
<td>Number of seconds after which samples will automatically be deleted. Defaults to one year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.resource_shard</td>
<td>604800</td>
<td>Duration in seconds for which samples will be stored at the same key. Defaults to 7 days in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.query.minimum_step</td>
<td>30000</td>
<td>Minimum step size in milliseconds. Used to prevent large queries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.query.interval_divider</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>If no interval is specified in the query, the step will be divided into this many intervals when aggregating values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.query.heartbeat</td>
<td>450000</td>
<td>Duration in milliseconds. Used when no heartbeat is specified. Should generally be 1.5x your largest collection interval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.query.parallelism</td>
<td>Number of cores</td>
<td>Maximum number of threads that can be used to compute aggregates. Defaults to the number of available cores.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.cache.strategy</td>
<td>See bellow</td>
<td>Canonical name of the class used for resource level caching. See the table bellow for all of the available options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.cache.max_entries</td>
<td>8192</td>
<td>Maximum number of records to keep in the cache when using an in-memory caching strategy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Available caching strategies include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In-Memory Cache</td>
<td>org.opennms.netmgt.newts.support.GuavaSearchableResourceMetadataCache</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

231
Redis Cache

When enabled, the following options can be used to configure the Redis-based cache.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.cache.redis_hostname</td>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>IP address of hostname of the Redis server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org.opennms.newts.config.cache.redis_port</td>
<td>6379</td>
<td>TCP port used to connect to the Redis server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

You will likely want to change the values of cache.max_entries and the ring_buffer_size to suit your installation.

Meta-data related to resources are cached in order to avoid writing redundant records in Cassandra. If you are collecting data from a large number of resources, you should increase the cache.max_entries to reflect the number of resources you are collecting from, with a suitable buffer.

The samples gathered by the collectors are temporarily stored in a ring buffer before they are persisted to Cassandra using Newts. The value of the ring_buffer_size should be increased if you expect large peaks of collectors returning at once or latency in persisting these to Cassandra. However, note that the memory used by the ring buffer is reserved, and larger values may require an increased heap size.

**11.4.2. Cassandra Monitoring**

This section describes some of the metrics OpenNMS Horizon collects from a Cassandra cluster.

- JMX must be enabled on the Cassandra nodes and made accessible from OpenNMS Horizon in order to collect these metrics. See Enabling JMX authentication for details.

  The data collection is bound to the agent IP interface with the service name JMX-Cassandra. The JMXCollector is used to retrieve the MBean entities from the Cassandra node.

**Client Connections**

The number of active client connections from org.apache.cassandra.metrics.Client are collected:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connectedNativeClients</td>
<td>Metrics for connected native clients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectedThriftClients</td>
<td>Metrics for connected thrift clients</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compaction Bytes**

The following compaction manager metrics from `org.apache.cassandra.metrics.Compaction` are collected:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BytesCompacted</td>
<td>Number of bytes compacted since node started</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compaction Tasks**

The following compaction manager metrics from `org.apache.cassandra.metrics.Compaction` are collected:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CompletedTasks</td>
<td>Estimated number of completed compaction tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PendingTasks</td>
<td>Estimated number of pending compaction tasks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Storage Load**

The following storage load metrics from `org.apache.cassandra.metrics.Storage` are collected:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Load</td>
<td>Total disk space (in bytes) used by this node</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Storage Exceptions**

The following storage exception metrics from `org.apache.cassandra.metrics.Storage` are collected:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exceptions</td>
<td>Number of unhandled exceptions since start of this Cassandra instance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dropped Messages**

Measurement of messages that were `DROPPABLE`. These ran after a given timeout set per message type so was thrown away. In `JMX` these are accessible via `org.apache.cassandra.metrics.DroppedMessage`. The number of dropped messages in the different message queues are good indicators whether a cluster can handle its load.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mutation</td>
<td>MutationStage</td>
<td>If a write message is processed after its timeout (write_request_timeout_in_ms) it either sent a failure to the client or it met its requested consistency level and will relay on hinted handoff and read repairs to do the mutation if it succeeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counter_Mutation</td>
<td>MutationStage</td>
<td>If a write message is processed after its timeout (write_request_timeout_in_ms) it either sent a failure to the client or it met its requested consistency level and will relay on hinted handoff and read repairs to do the mutation if it succeeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read_Repair</td>
<td>MutationStage</td>
<td>Times out after write_request_timeout_in_ms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read</td>
<td>ReadStage</td>
<td>Times out after read_request_timeout_in_ms. No point in servicing reads after that point since it would of returned error to client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range_Slice</td>
<td>ReadStage</td>
<td>Times out after range_request_timeout_in_ms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request_Response</td>
<td>RequestResponse</td>
<td>Times out after request_timeout_in_ms. Response was completed and sent back but not before the timeout.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Thread pools

*Apache Cassandra* is based on a so called *Staged Event Driven Architecture* (SEDA). This separates different operations in stages and these stages are loosely coupled using a messaging service. Each of these components use queues and thread pools to group and execute their tasks. The documentation for *Cassandra* thread pool monitoring is originated from [Pythian Guide to Cassandra Thread Pools](https://pythian.com/guides/cassandra-thread-pools/).

#### Table 88. Collected metrics for Thread Pools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActiveTasks</td>
<td>Tasks that are currently running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CompletedTasks</td>
<td>Tasks that have been completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurrentlyBlockedTasks</td>
<td>Tasks that have been blocked due to a full queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PendingTasks</td>
<td>Tasks queued for execution</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Memtable FlushWriter

Sort and write memtables to disk from `org.apache.cassandra.metrics.ThreadPools`. A vast majority of time this backing up is from over running disk capability. The sorting can cause issues as well however. In the case of sorting being a problem, it is usually accompanied with high load but a small amount of actual flushes (seen in cfstats). Can be from huge rows with large column names, i.e. something inserting many large values into a CQL collection. If overrunning disk capabilities, it is recommended to add nodes or tune the configuration.

💡 Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0
Memtable Post Flusher

Operations after flushing the *memtable*. Discard commit log files that have had all data in them in *sstorables*. Flushing non-cf backed secondary indexes.

⚠️ Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

Anti Entropy Stage

Repairing consistency. Handle repair messages like merkle tree transfer (from Validation compaction) and streaming.

⚠️ Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

Gossip Stage

Post 2.0.3 there should no longer be issue with pending tasks. Instead monitor logs for a message:

```
Gossip stage has {} pending tasks; skipping status check ...
```

Before that change, in particular older versions of 1.2, with a lot of nodes (100+) while using vnodes can cause a lot of CPU intensive work that caused the stage to get behind. Been known to of been caused with out of sync schemas. Check *NTP* working correctly and attempt `nodetool resetlocalschema` or the more drastic deleting of system column family folder.

⚠️ Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

Migration Stage

Making schema changes

⚠️ Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

MiscStage

Snapshoptting, replicating data after node remove completed.

⚠️ Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

Mutation Stage

Performing a local including:

- insert/updates
- Schema merges
- commit log replays
- hints in progress
Similar to ReadStage, an increase in pending tasks here can be caused by disk issues, over loading a system, or poor tuning. If messages are backed up in this stage, you can add nodes, tune hardware and configuration, or update the data model and use case.

Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

Read Stage

Performing a local read. Also includes deserializing data from row cache. If there are pending values this can cause increased read latency. This can spike due to disk problems, poor tuning, or over loading your cluster. In many cases (not disk failure) this is resolved by adding nodes or tuning the system.

Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

Request Response Stage

When a response to a request is received this is the stage used to execute any callbacks that were created with the original request.

Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

Read Repair Stage

Performing read repairs. Chance of them occurring is configurable per column family with read_repair_chance. More likely to back up if using CL.ONE (and to lesser possibly other non-CL.ALL queries) for reads and using multiple data centers. It will then be kicked off asynchronously outside of the queries feedback loop. Note that this is not very likely to be a problem since does not happen on all queries and is fast providing good connectivity between replicas. The repair being droppable also means that after write_request_timeout_in_ms it will be thrown away which further mitigates this. If pending grows attempt to lower the rate for high read CFs.

Alerts: pending > 15 || blocked > 0

JVM Metrics

Some key metrics from the running Java virtual machine are also collected:

java.lang:type=Memory

The memory system of the Java virtual machine. This includes heap and non-heap memory

java.lang:type=GarbageCollector,name=ConcurrentMarkSweep

Metrics for the garbage collection process of the Java virtual machine

If you use Apache Cassandra for running Newts you can also enable additional metrics for the Newts keyspace.
11.4.3. Newts Monitoring

This section describes the metrics *OpenNMS Horizon* collects for monitoring the *Newts* keyspace from `org.apache.cassandra.metrics.Keyspace` on an *Cassandra* node.

JMX must be enabled on the *Cassandra* nodes and made accessible from `_OpenNMS Horizon` in order to collect these metrics. See Enabling JMX authentication for details.

The data collection is bound to the agent IP interface with the service name *JMX-Cassandra-Newts*. The *JMXCollector* is used to retrieve the *MBean* entities from the *Cassandra* node.

### All Memory Table Data Size

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AllMemtablesLiveDataSize</td>
<td>Total amount of live data stored in the memtables (2i and pending flush memtables included) that resides off-heap, excluding any data structure overhead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllMemtablesOffHeapDataSize</td>
<td>Total amount of data stored in the memtables (2i and pending flush memtables included) that resides off-heap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllMemtablesOnHeapDataSize</td>
<td>Total amount of data stored in the memtables (2i and pending flush memtables included) that resides on-heap.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Memtable Switch Count

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MemtableSwitchCount</td>
<td>Number of times flush has resulted in the memtable being switched out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Memtable Columns Count

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MemtableColumnsCount</td>
<td>Total number of columns present in the memtable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Memory Table Data Size

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MemtableLiveDataSize</td>
<td>Total amount of live data stored in the memtable, excluding any data structure overhead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MemtableOffHeapDataSize</td>
<td>Total amount of data stored in the memtable that resides off-heap, including column related overhead and partitions overwritten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MemtableOnHeapDataSize</td>
<td>Total amount of data stored in the memtable that resides on-heap, including column related overhead and partitions overwritten.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Read and Write Latency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ReadTotalLatency</td>
<td>Local read metrics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WriteTotalLatency</td>
<td>Local write metrics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Range Latency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RangeLatency 99th Percentile</td>
<td>Local range slice metrics 99th percentile.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Latency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CasCommitTotalLatency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CasPrepareTotalLatency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CasProposeTotalLatency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Bloom Filter Disk Space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BloomFilterDiskSpaceUsed</td>
<td>Disk space used by bloom filter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Bloom Filter Off Heap Memory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BloomFilterOffHeapMemoryUsed</td>
<td>Off heap memory used by bloom filter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Newts Memory Used

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CompressionMetadataOffHeapMemoryUsed</td>
<td>Off heap memory used by compression meta data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IndexSummaryOffHeapMemoryUsed</td>
<td>Off heap memory used by index summary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Pending

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PendingCompactions</td>
<td>Estimate of number of pending compactions for this column family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PendingFlushes</td>
<td>Estimated number of tasks pending for this column family</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Disk Space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TotalDiskSpaceUsed</td>
<td>Total disk space used by <em>SSTables</em> belonging to this column family including obsolete ones waiting to be garbage collected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiveDiskSpaceUsed</td>
<td>Disk space used by <em>SSTables</em> belonging to this column family</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.5. Daemon Configuration Files

#### 11.5.1. Notifd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal Daemon Name</th>
<th>Reload Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notifd</td>
<td>uei.opennms.org/internal/reloadDaemonConfig -p 'daemonName Notifd'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 89. Notifd configuration file overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Restart Required</th>
<th>Reload Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>notifd-configuration.xml</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Describes auto-acknowledge prefix, e.g. prefix &quot;RESOLVED: &quot; for nodeUp/nodeDown events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notificationCommands.xml</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Configuration for notification media, e.g. scripts, XMPP or HTTP Post, immediately applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notifications.xml</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Event notification definitions and changes are immediately applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destinationPaths.xml</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Contains paths for notification targets, e.g. JavaMail, XMPP or external scripts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>users.xml</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Contain pager and address information for notification destination paths.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>groups.xml</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Groups can be used as target for notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>javamail-configuration.properties</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>Configuration to send notification mails via specific mail servers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 12. System Properties

The global behavior of OpenNMS is configured with Property files. Configuration can have also effect on the Java Virtual Machine underneath OpenNMS. Changes in these property files require a restart of OpenNMS. The configuration files can be found in ${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc.

The priority for Java system properties is as follows:

1. Those set via the Java command line i.e. in opennms.conf via ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
2. opennms.properties.d/*.properties
3. opennms.properties
4. libraries.properties
5. rrd-configuration.properties
6. bootstrap.properties

Property files in opennms.properties.d/ are sorted alphabetically.

To avoid conflicts with customized configurations, all custom properties can be added to one or more files in ${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/opennms.properties.d/. It is recommended to avoid modification of OpenNMS properties from the default installation. Create dedicated files with your customized properties in opennms.properties.d/.
Chapter 13. Ticketing

The ticketing integration allows OpenNMS Horizon to create trouble tickets in external systems. Tickets can be created and updated in response to new and/or resolved alarms.

13.1. JIRA Ticketing Plugin

The JIRA Ticketing Plugin is used to create JIRA Issues in response to OpenNMS Horizon alarms.

13.1.1. Setup

First, you'll need to install the opennms-plugin-ticketer-jira package for your system. The JIRA ticketing plugin and it's dependencies are not part of the core packages.

Now, in order to enable the plugin start by setting following property in `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/opennms.properties`:

```
opennms.ticketer.plugin=org.opennms.netmgt.ticketd.OSGiBasedTicketerPlugin
```

Configure the plugin options by setting the following properties in `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/jira.properties`:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jira.host</td>
<td>JIRA Server Url</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.username</td>
<td>Username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.password</td>
<td>Password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.project</td>
<td>Project Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.type</td>
<td>Issue Type ID to use when opening new issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.resolve</td>
<td>Name of the transition to use when resolving issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.reopen</td>
<td>Name of the transition to use when re-opening issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.status.open</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of JIRA status names for which the ticket should be considered 'Open'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.status.closed</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of JIRA status names for which the ticket should be considered 'Closed'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jira.status.cancelled</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of JIRA status names for which the ticket should be considered 'Cancelled'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The transition names for `resolve` and `reopen` are typically found on buttons when looking at the ticket in JIRA.
Next, add `jira-troubleticketer` to the `featuresBoot` property in the `$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/org.apache.karaf.features.cfg`

Restart `OpenNMS Horizon`.

When `OpenNMS Horizon` has started again, login to the `Karaf Shell` and install the feature:

```shell
features:install jira-troubleticketer
```

The plugin should be ready to use. When troubleshooting, consult the following log files:

- `$OPENNMS_HOME/data/log/karaf.log`
- `$OPENNMS_HOME/logs/trouble-ticketer.log`

### 13.2. TSRM Ticketing Plugin

The `TSRM Ticketing Plugin` is used to create TSRM incidents in response to `OpenNMS Horizon` alarms.

#### 13.2.1. Setup

In order to enable the plugin start by setting following property in `$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/opennms.properties`:

```properties
opennms.ticketer.plugin=org.opennms.netmgt.ticketd.OSGiBasedTicketerPlugin
```

Configure the plugin options by setting the following properties in `$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/tsrm.properties`:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>tsrm.url</code></td>
<td>TSRM Endpoint URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsrm.ssl.strict</code></td>
<td>Strict SSL Check (true/false)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsrm.status.open</code></td>
<td>TSRM status for open ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsrm.status.close</code></td>
<td>TSRM status for close ticket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next, add `tsrm-troubleticketer` to the `featuresBoot` property in the `$OPENNMS_HOME/etc/org.apache.karaf.features.cfg`

Restart `OpenNMS`.

When `OpenNMS` has started again, login to the `Karaf Shell` and install the feature:
The plugin should be ready to use. When troubleshooting, consult the following log files:

- ${OPENNMS_HOME}/data/log/karaf.log
- ${OPENNMS_HOME}/logs/trouble-ticketer.log

### 13.2.2. Mapping OpenNMS Ticket with TSRM Incident

Following tables shows mapping between OpenNMS ticket and TSRM Incident

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ticket Field</th>
<th>TSRM Incident Field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>TICKETID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>STATUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summary</td>
<td>DESCRIPTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>details</td>
<td>DESCRIPTIONLONGDESCRIPTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>REPORTEDBY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Below fields are not part of Ticket, they have to be added as attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ticket Field</th>
<th>TSRM Incident Field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affectedPerson</td>
<td>AFFECTEDPERSON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetNum</td>
<td>ASSETNUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classId</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classStructureId</td>
<td>CLASSSTRUCTUREID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commodity</td>
<td>COMMODITY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>LOCATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ownerGroup</td>
<td>OWNERGROUP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shsCallerType</td>
<td>SHSCALLERTYPE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shsReasonForOutage</td>
<td>SHSREASONFOROUTAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shsResolution</td>
<td>SHSRESOLUTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shsRoomNumber</td>
<td>SHSROOMNUMBER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siteId</td>
<td>SITEID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statusIface</td>
<td>STATUSINTERFACE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 14. Enabling RMI

By default, the RMI port in the OpenNMS Horizon server is disabled, for security reasons. If you wish to enable it so you can access OpenNMS Horizon through jconsole, remote-manage OpenNMS Horizon, or use the remote poller over RMI, you will have to add some settings to the default OpenNMS Horizon install.

14.1. Enabling RMI

To enable the RMI port in OpenNMS Horizon, you will have to add the following to the 
\texttt{${OPENNMS\_HOME}/etc/opennms.conf} file. If you do not have an \texttt{opennms.conf} file, you can create it.

```bash
# Configure remote JMX
ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.port=18980"
ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.local.only=false"
ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.authenticate=true"
ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl=false"

# Listen on all interfaces
ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS
-Dopennms.poller.server.serverHost=0.0.0.0"
# Accept remote RMI connections on this interface
ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL\_MANAGER\_OPTIONS
-Djava.rmi.server.hostname=<your-server-ip-address>"
```

This tells OpenNMS Horizon to listen for RMI on port 18980, and to listen on all interfaces. (Originally, RMI was only used for the Remote Poller, so despite the property name mentioning the "opennms poller server" it applies to RMI as a whole.) Note that you must include the -Djava.rmi.server.hostname= option or OpenNMS Horizon will accept connections on the RMI port, but not be able to complete a valid connection.

Authentication will only be allowed for users that are in the admin role. To make a user an admin, add them to the role.admin.users entry in 
\texttt{${OPENNMS\_HOME}/etc/magic-users.properties}:

```properties
... 
role.admin.name=OpenNMS Administrator
role.admin.users=admin,myuser
... 
```
14.2. Enabling SSL

To enable SSL on the RMI port, you will need to have an existing keystore for the OpenNMS Horizon server. For information on configuring a keystore, please refer to the official OpenNMS Horizon Wiki article Standalone HTTPS with Jetty.

You will need to change the `com.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl` option to `true`, and tell OpenNMS Horizon where your keystore is.

```bash
# Configure remote JMX
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.port=18980"
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.local.only=false"
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.authenticate=true"
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Dcom.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl=true"

# Configure SSL Keystore
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=/opt/opennms/etc/opennms.keystore"
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=changeit"

# Listen on all interfaces
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Dopennms.poller.server.serverHost=0.0.0.0"

# Accept remote RMI connections on this interface
ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS="$ADDITIONAL_MANAGER_OPTIONS
-Djava.rmi.server.hostname=<your-server-ip-address>"
```

14.3. Connecting to RMI over SSL

Note that if you are using a self-signed or otherwise untrusted certificate, you will need to configure a truststore on the client side when you attempt to connect over SSL-enabled RMI. To create a truststore, follow the example in the HTTPS client instructions in the operator section of the manual. You may then use the truststore to connect to your OpenNMS Horizon RMI server.

For example, when using jconsole to connect to the OpenNMS Horizon RMI interface to get JVM statistics, you would run:

```bash
jconsole -J-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=/path/to/opennms.truststore -J
-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=changeit
```
14.4. Creating Custom Authentication Roles

By default, RMI will only authenticate users in the `admin` role. To create a custom role for RMI access, first add the role to `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/magic-users.properties`:

```plaintext
...  
# add mycustomrole to the end of the roles= entry  
roles=rtc, admin, rouser, dashboard, provision, remoting, rest, asset, mobile, mycustomrole  
# ...and then give it a name and a list of users  
role.mycustomrole.name=OpenNMS Remote RMI User  
role.mycustomrole.users=admin,myuser  
...  
```

Then, you must configure JMX to know about the new custom role by adding it to `${OPENNMS_HOME}/etc/jmxremote.access`:

```plaintext
admin readwrite  
mycustomrole readonly  
```

The possible types of access are:

`readwrite`

- Allows retrieving JMX metrics as well as executing MBeans.

`readonly`

- Allows retrieving JMX metrics but does **not** allow executing MBeans, even if they just return simple values.
Chapter 15. Plugin Manager

With the introduction of Karaf as an OSGi application container, OpenNMS Horizon now has the ability to install or upgrade features on top of a running instance of OpenNMS Horizon. In addition, the new distributed OSGi architecture allows an OpenNMS Horizon system to be deployed as multiple software modules each running in their own Karaf instance.

The OpenNMS Horizon Plugin Manager provides a unified interface for managing the lifecycle of optional OSGi plugins installed in OpenNMS Horizon or in any Karaf instances which it manages. This need not be limited to Karaf instances running OpenNMS Horizon but can also be used to deploy modules to Karaf instances running user applications.

In addition to managing the installation of OSGi features, the Plugin Manager also allows the installation of licence keys which can be used to enable features for a particular instance of OpenNMS Horizon. Although the OpenNMS Horizon platform remains open source, this provides a mechanism for third parties developing features on top of the OpenNMS Horizon platform to manage access to their software.

The Plugin Manager also provides a mechanism for a separate ‘app-store’ or Available Plugins Server to be used to deliver these new features and / or licences into a particular OpenNMS Horizon instance. It is also possible to deliver software without access to the internet using the traditional Karaf Kar/RPM deployment model. In this case a number of features can be delivered together in a single software package but each only enabled at run time using the Plugin Manager.

OpenNMS Horizon plugins are standard Karaf features with additional metadata which describes the feature and the licence (if any) required. A plugin requiring a licence will not start if a valid licence string is not also installed.

Note that Karaf’s features mechanism has not been modified in any way. The Plugin Manager simply provides a user front end and additional metadata for features. Features can be installed from remote maven repositories or Kar files placed in the deploy directory depending on how the Karaf configuration is set up. The standard OpenNMS Horizon configuration has no remote maven access enabled for Karaf and features must be locally provisioned as a Kar or an RPM before being enabled with the Plugin Manager.

This guide describes how to deploy and manage plugins using the Plugin Manager. A separate plugin developer’s guide is provided for those wishing to write their own plugins.

15.1. Plugin Manager UI panel

The Plugin Manager is accessed as an entry in the Additional Tools panel of the OpenNMS Horizon Admin Gui.
The Plugin Manager administration page is split into six main areas as illustrated below.

1. Top Left is the Karaf Instance data panel which lists the Karaf instances known to the Plugin Manager. When a Karaf instance is selected, the data on the rest of the page refers to the selected instance.

2. Bottom Left is the Available Plugins Server Panel which is used to set the address and passwords to access the Available Plugins Server and / or the list of locally available plugins provided by a Kar or RPM.

3. Top Right, just below the main OpenNMS Horizon menu bar are links to three diagnostic pages which can help test the ReST interface to remote Karaf Instances.

4. Middle Right is a messages panel which reports the status of any operations. If an operation fails, the full error message can be viewed by pressing the error message button.

5. Bottom Right is a tabbed panel which reflects the status of the plugins and licences installed in the Karaf instance selected by the Karaf Instance data panel.
15.2. Setting Karaf Instance Data

The Karaf instances known to the Plugin Manager are listed in the Karaf Instance data panel. 'Localhost' refers to the local OpenNMS Horizon server and is always an option in the panel. The Karaf instance data is persisted locally and should be refreshed from remote sources using the reload Karaf instance data button before changes are made.

Each Karaf instance must have a unique system id which is used to update its configuration and also to validate its licences. The system id must be unique and included a checksum. A new random system id can be generated for a Karaf instance using a button on the panel.

In most situations the remote Karaf instance can be accessed from the OpenNMS Horizon Plugin Manager. However in many cases, the remote Karaf will be behind a firewall in which case it must initiate the communications to request its configuration and supply an update on its status.

The 'Remote is Accessible' field tells the Plugin Manager which mode of operation is in use.
Remote request of configuration is not yet fully implemented and will be completed in a future release.

Table 90. Karaf Instance Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instance Name</td>
<td>host Name of the Karaf instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karaf URL</td>
<td>URL used to access the Karaf Plugin Manager ReST API</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Instance System ID</td>
<td>The system ID currently installed in the Karaf system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manifest System ID</td>
<td>The system ID to be provisioned in the Karaf system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote is Accessible</td>
<td>If ticked 'true', the Plugin Manager will try and contact the remote Karaf instance using the URL. If not ticked (i.e. false), the remote Karaf instance must request its configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Status Update from Remote</td>
<td>Allow the remote Karaf instance to request an update to its remote configuration from the locally held manifest and at the same time to update its status.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.3. Manually adding a managed *Karaf* instance

The list of *Karaf* instances can be modified using the *Karaf* instance editor illustrated below. The same fields apply as above.

![Karaf List Editor](image)

15.4. Installed Plugins

Under plugin settings, the Installed Plugins tab lists which plugins are currently installed in the *Karaf* instance selected in the *Karaf* instance data panel. System Plugins cannot be uninstalled through the UI. (The *Plugin Manager* is itself a system plugin). Non-system plugins can be reinstalled or removed from the system. Each plugin has metadata associated with it which is used to identify and describe the plugin.

*Table 91. Plugin Metadata Fields*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Plugin Metadata</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Product ID</td>
<td>The unique key used to identify the name and version of the feature. (Same as Karaf Feature Name/Version)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licence Key Required</td>
<td>If true (ticked), this plugin needs a licence key to start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licence Validated</td>
<td>If a licence key is required, a green text label will indicate if the licence has been installed and validated. Otherwise a red text label will indicate an invalid licence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Plugin</td>
<td>If true (ticked) this is a system plugin and cannot be removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Packaging Descriptor</td>
<td>This describes the packaging mechanism by which the feature was delivered. This will refer to a Kar if the feature was manually installed as a Kar/RPM on the host server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Repository URL</td>
<td>The URL identifying the feature repository (Same as Karaf Feature Repository URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product Description</td>
<td>A textual description of the functionality provided by the plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product URL</td>
<td>A URL to point to the plugin’s documentation / web site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licence Type</td>
<td>A description of the licence applied to the plugin (May be GPL if the plugin is not subject to an ELUA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organisation</td>
<td>The organisation issuing the plugin and/or licence.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.5. Available Plugins Server

The Plugin Manager obtains a list of available plugins from the 'Available Plugin’s server'. This may also host a maven repo used to download the features if feature download from maven is enabled in Karaf.

Alternatively the Plugin Manager can list the available plugins which have been installed as bundled Plugin Kar/RPM’s on the local machine. In this case, the Plugin Server URL should be pointed at the localhost.

The admin username and passwords are used to access the Available Plugins Server. If a shopping
cart is provided for obtaining licences, the URL of the shopping cart should be filled in.

![Available Plugins Server]

### 15.6. Installing Available Plugins

The Available Plugins panel list the plugins which are available and listed by the Available Plugins server. These can be directly installed into the selected Karaf instance or can be posted to a manifest for later installation. If a plugin is installed, the system will try and start it. However if a corresponding licence is required and not installed, the features will be loaded but not started. You must restart the feature if you later install a licence key.
15.7. Plugins Manifest

The Plugins Manifest for a given Karaf instance lists the target plugins which the Karaf instance should install when it next contacts the licence manager. If the Plugin Manager can communicate with the remote server, then a manifest can be selected for installation. A manual manifest entry can also be created for a feature. This can be used to install features which are not listed in the Available Features list.
15.8. Installed Licences Panel

Each licence has a licence ID which is the Karaf feature ID of the feature to which the licence refers. Many licences can be installed on a system but only one licence string is allowed per feature ID.

Licence Strings are used to validate that a particular feature can be run on a given Karaf instance. The Plugin Manager will not allow a feature to run if it's licence cannot be validated using a private key encoded in the feature bundle.

Licences are associated with specific Product ID’s and specific Karaf instances. Several Karaf instances can be listed in a licence allowing a feature to run on more than one system using the
same licence. When a licence is installed, the licence metadata is decoded and displayed.

A licence may be installed before or after its associated feature is installed. If a licence is installed after the feature the feature must be restarted before the licence will be read.

15.9. Adding a New Licence

New licences are added using the add licence panel. Licences are obtained from the App Store where they can be generated by a user for a given set of system id's.
A licence must be copied (cut and paste) from the app store into the add licence panel. The 'Validate licence' button should be used to check the licence has been installed correctly. Please note that this just checks the integrity of the licence string. A licence is only authenticated once it is installed and the corresponding feature bundle checks it on start-up.